This information is provided free of charge by the Department of Industrial Relations from its web site at www.dir.ca.gov. These regulations are for the convenience of the user and no representation or warranty is made that the information is current or accurate. See full disclaimer at https://www.dir.ca.gov/od_pub/disclaimer.html.

Return to index
New query

---

§3203. Injury and Illness Prevention Program.

(a) Effective July 1, 1991, every employer shall establish, implement and maintain an effective Injury and Illness Prevention Program (Program). The Program shall be in writing and, shall, at a minimum:

(1) Identify the person or persons with authority and responsibility for implementing the Program.

(2) Include a system for ensuring that employees comply with safe and healthy work practices. Substantial compliance with this provision includes recognition of employees who follow safe and healthful work practices, training and retraining programs, disciplinary actions, or any other such means that ensures employee compliance with safe and healthful work practices.

(3) Include a system for communicating with employees in a form readily understandable by all affected employees on matters relating to occupational safety and health, including provisions designed to encourage employees to inform the employer of hazards at the worksite without fear of reprisal. Substantial compliance with this provision includes meetings, training programs, posting, written communications, a system of anonymous notification by employees about hazards, labor/management safety and health committees, or any other means that ensures communication with employees.

Exception: Employers having fewer than 10 employees shall be permitted to communicate to and instruct employees orally in general safe work practices with specific instructions with respect to hazards unique to the employees' job assignments as compliance with subsection (a)(3).

(4) Include procedures for identifying and evaluating work place hazards including scheduled periodic inspections to identify unsafe conditions and work practices. Inspections shall be made to identify and evaluate hazards:

(A) When the Program is first established;

Exception: Those employers having in place on July 1, 1991, a written Injury and Illness Prevention Program complying with previously existing section 3203.

(B) Whenever new substances, processes, procedures, or equipment are introduced to the workplace that represent a new occupational safety and health hazard; and

(C) Whenever the employer is made aware of a new or previously unrecognized hazard.

(5) Include a procedure to investigate occupational injury or occupational illness.

(6) Include methods and/or procedures for correcting unsafe or unhealthy conditions, work practices and work procedures in a timely manner based on the severity of the hazard:

(A) When observed or discovered; and,

(B) When an imminent hazard exists which cannot be immediately abated without endangering employee(s) and/or property, remove all exposed personnel from the area except those necessary to correct the existing condition. Employees necessary to correct the hazardous condition shall be provided the necessary safeguards.

(7) Provide training and instruction:

(A) When the program is first established;

Exception: Employers having in place on July 1, 1991, a written Injury and Illness Prevention Program complying with the previously existing Accident Prevention Program in Section 3203.

(B) To all new employees;

(C) To all employees given new job assignments for which training has not previously been received;

(D) Whenever new substances, processes, procedures or equipment are introduced to the workplace and represent a new hazard;

(E) Whenever the employer is made aware of a new or previously unrecognized hazard; and,

(F) For supervisors to familiarize themselves with the safety and health hazards to which employees under their immediate direction and control may be exposed.

(8) Allow employee access to the Program.

(A) As used in this subsection:

1. The term “access” means the right and opportunity to examine and receive a copy.

2. The term “designated representative” means any individual or organization to whom an employee gives written authorization to exercise a right of access. A recognized or certified collective bargaining agent shall be treated automatically as a designated representative for the purpose of access to the Program.

3. The term “written authorization” means a request provided to the employer containing the following information:

a. The name and signature of the employee authorizing a designated representative to access the Program on the employee's behalf;

b. The date of the request;

c. The name of the designated representative (individual or organization) authorized to receive the Program on the employee's behalf; and

d. The date upon which the written authorization will expire (if less than one (1) year).

(B) The employer shall provide access to the Program by doing one of the following:

1. Provide access in a reasonable time, place, and manner, but in no event later than five (5) business days after the request for access is received from an employee or designated representative.

a. Whenever an employee or designated representative requests a copy of the Program, the employer shall provide the requester a printed copy of the Program, unless the employee or designated representative agrees to receive an electronic copy of the Program.

b. One printed copy of the Program shall be provided free of charge. If the employee or designated representative requests additional copies of the Program within one (1) year of the previous request and the Program has not been updated with new information since the prior copy was provided, the employer may charge reasonable, non-discriminatory reproduction costs (per Section 3204(e)(1)(E)) for the additional copies. or,

2. Provide unobstructed access through a company server or website, which allows an employee to review, print, and email the current version of the Program. Unobstructed access means that the employee, as part of his or her regular work duties, predictably and routinely uses the electronic means to communicate with management or coworkers.

(C) The Program provided to the employee or designated representative need not include any of the records of the steps taken to implement and maintain the written Program.

(D) If an employer has distinctly different and separate operations with distinctly separate and different Programs, the employer may limit access to the Program (or Programs) applicable to the employee requesting it.

(E) The employer shall communicate the right and procedure to access the Program to all employees.

(F) Nothing in this section is intended to preclude employees and collective bargaining agents from collectively bargaining to obtain access to information in addition to that available under this section.

(b) Records of the steps taken to implement and maintain the Program shall include:

(1) Records of scheduled and periodic inspections required by subsection (a)(4) to identify unsafe conditions and work practices, including person(s) conducting the inspection, the unsafe conditions and work practices that have been identified and action taken to correct the identified unsafe conditions and work practices. These records shall be maintained for at least one (1) year; and

Exception: Employers with fewer than 10 employees may elect to maintain the inspection records only until the hazard is corrected.

(2) Documentation of safety and health training required by subsection (a)(7) for each employee, including employee name or other identifier, training dates, type(s) of training, and training providers. This documentation shall be maintained for at least one (1) year.

EXCEPTION NO. 1:Employers with fewer than 10 employees can substantially comply with the documentation provision by maintaining a log of instructions provided to the employee with respect to the hazards unique to the employees' job assignment when first hired or assigned new duties.

EXCEPTION NO. 2: Training records of employees who have worked for less than one (1) year for the employer need not be retained beyond the term of employment if they are provided to the employee upon termination of employment.

EXCEPTION NO. 3: For Employers with fewer than 20 employees who are in industries that are not on a designated list of high-hazard industries established by the Department of Industrial Relations (Department) and who have a Workers' Compensation Experience Modification Rate of 1.1 or less, and for any employers with fewer than 20 employees who are in industries on a designated list of low-hazard industries established by the Department, written documentation of the Program may be limited to the following requirements:

A. Written documentation of the identity of the person or persons with authority and responsibility for implementing the program as required by subsection (a)(1).

B. Written documentation of scheduled periodic inspections to identify unsafe conditions and work practices as required by subsection (a)(4).

C. Written documentation of training and instruction as required by subsection (a)(7).

ExceptionNo. 4: Local governmental entities (any county, city, city and county, or district, or any public or quasi-public corporation or public agency therein, including any public entity, other than a state agency, that is a member of, or created by, a joint powers agreement) are not required to keep records concerning the steps taken to implement and maintain the Program.

Note1: Employers determined by the Division to have historically utilized seasonal or intermittent employees shall be deemed in compliance with respect to the requirements for a written Program if the employer adopts the Model Program prepared by the Division and complies with the requirements set forth therein.

Note2: Employers in the construction industry who are required to be licensed under Chapter 9 (commencing with Section 7000) of Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code may use records relating to employee training provided to the employer in connection with an occupational safety and health training program approved by the Division, and shall only be required to keep records of those steps taken to implement and maintain the program with respect to hazards specific to the employee's job duties.

(c) Employers who elect to use a labor/management safety and health committee to comply with the communication requirements of subsection (a)(3) of this section shall be presumed to be in substantial compliance with subsection (a)(3) if the committee:

(1) Meets regularly, but not less than quarterly;

(2) Prepares and makes available to the affected employees, written records of the safety and health issues discussed at the committee meetings and, maintained for review by the Division upon request. The committee meeting records shall be maintained for at least one (1) year;

(3) Reviews results of the periodic, scheduled worksite inspections;

(4) Reviews investigations of occupational accidents and causes of incidents resulting in occupational injury, occupational illness, or exposure to hazardous substances and, where appropriate, submits suggestions to management for the prevention of future incidents;

(5) Reviews investigations of alleged hazardous conditions brought to the attention of any committee member. When determined necessary by the committee, the committee may conduct its own inspection and investigation to assist in remedial solutions;

(6) Submits recommendations to assist in the evaluation of employee safety suggestions; and

(7) Upon request from the Division, verifies abatement action taken by the employer to abate citations issued by the Division.

Note: Authority cited: Sections 142.3 and 6401.7, Labor Code. Reference: Sections 142.3 and 6401.7, Labor Code.

HISTORY

1. New section filed 4-1-77; effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 77, No. 14). For former history, see Register 74, No. 43.

2. Editorial correction of subsection (a)(1) (Register 77, No. 41).

3. Amendment of subsection (a)(2) filed 4-12-83; effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 83, No. 16).

4. Amendment filed 1-16-91; operative 2-15-91 (Register 91, No. 8).

5. Editorial correction of subsections (a), (a)(2), (a)(4)(A) and (a)(7) (Register 91, No. 31).

6. Change without regulatory effect amending subsection (a)(7)(F) filed 10-2-92; operative 11-2-92 (Register 92, No. 40).

7. Amendment of subsection (b)(2), ExceptionNo. 1, new ExceptionNo. 3 through ExceptionNo. 4, Note2, and amendment of subsection (c)(2) filed 9-13-94; operative 9-13-94 pursuant to Government Code section 11346.2 (Register 94, No. 37).

8. Editorial correction of subsections (a)(6)(A) and (a)(7)(A) (Register 95, No. 22).

9. Amendment of subsections (b)(1)-(2) and (c)(2) filed 6-1-95; operative 7-3-95 (Register 95, No. 22).

10. Editorial correction of subsection (a)(4) (Register 2002, No. 46).

11. New subsections (a)(8)-(a)(8)(F) filed 3-3-2020; operative 7-1-2020 (Register 2020, No. 10).

Go Back to General Industry Safety Orders, Introduction

This information is provided free of charge by the Department of Industrial Relations from its web site at www.dir.ca.gov. These regulations are for the convenience of the user and no representation or warranty is made that the information is current or accurate. See full disclaimer at https://www.dir.ca.gov/od_pub/disclaimer.html.

Subchapter 7. General Industry Safety Orders
Group 1. General Physical Conditions and Structures Orders
Article 2. Standard Specifications

Return to index
New query

---

§3220. Emergency Action Plan.

(a) Scope and Application. This section applies to all emergency action plans. The emergency action plan shall be in writing, except as provided in the last sentence of subsection (e)(3) of this section, and shall cover those designated actions employers and employees must take to ensure employee safety from fire and other emergencies.

(b) Elements. The following elements, at a minimum, shall be included in the plan:

(1) Procedures for emergency evacuation, including type of evacuation and exit route assignments;

(2) Procedures to be followed by employees who remain to operate critical plant operations before they evacuate;

(3) Procedures to account for all employees after emergency evacuation has been completed;

(4) Procedures to be followed by employees performing rescue or medical duties;

(5) The preferred means of reporting fires and other emergencies; and

(6) Names or regular job titles of persons or departments who can be contacted for further information or explanation of duties under the plan.

(c) Alarm System.

(1) The employer shall establish an employee alarm system which complies with Article 165.

(2) If the employee alarm system is used for alerting fire brigade members, or for other purposes, a distinctive signal for each purpose shall be used.

(d) Evacuation. The employer shall establish in the emergency action plan the types of evacuation to be used in emergency circumstances.

(e) Training.

(1) Before implementing the emergency action plan, the employer shall designate and train a sufficient number of persons to assist in the safe and orderly emergency evacuation of employees.

(2) The employer shall advise each employee of his/her responsibility under the plan at the following times:

(A) Initially when the plan is developed,

(B) Whenever the employee's responsibilities or designated actions under the plan change, and

(C) Whenever the plan is changed.

(3) The employer shall review with each employee upon initial assignment those parts of the plan which the employee must know to protect the employee in the event of an emergency. The written plan shall be kept at the workplace and made available for employee review. For those employers with 10 or fewer employees the plan may be communicated orally to employees and the employer need not maintain a written plan.

Note: Authority and reference cited: Section 142.3, Labor Code.

HISTORY

1. New section filed 9-8-81; effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 81, No. 37).

2. Amendment of subsections (b)(1) and (b)(4) filed 6-5-2017; operative 6-5-2017. Submitted to OAL for printing only pursuant to Labor Code section 142.3(a)(3) (Register 2017, No. 23).

Go Back to Article 2 Table of Contents

This information is provided free of charge by the Department of Industrial Relations from its web site at www.dir.ca.gov. These regulations are for the convenience of the user and no representation or warranty is made that the information is current or accurate. See full disclaimer at https://www.dir.ca.gov/od_pub/disclaimer.html.

Subchapter 7. General Industry Safety Orders
Group 1. General Physical Conditions and Structures Orders
Article 2. Standard Specifications

Return to index
New query

---

§3221. Fire Prevention Plan.

(a) Scope and Application. This section applies to all fire prevention plans. The fire prevention plan shall be in writing, except as provided in the last sentence of subsection (d)(2) of this section.

(b) Elements. The following elements, at a minimum, shall be included in the fire prevention plan:

(1) Potential fire hazards and their proper handling and storage procedures, potential ignition sources (such as welding, smoking and others) and their control procedures, and the type of fire protection equipment or systems which can control a fire involving them;

(2) Names or regular job titles of those responsible for maintenance of equipment and systems installed to prevent or control ignitions or fires; and

(3) Names or regular job titles of those responsible for the control of accumulation of flammable or combustible waste materials.

(c) Housekeeping. The employer shall control accumulations of flammable and combustible waste materials and residues so that they do not contribute to a fire emergency. The housekeeping procedures shall be included in the written fire prevention plan.

(d) Training.

(1) The employer shall apprise employees of the fire hazards of the materials and processes to which they are exposed.

(2) The employer shall review with each employee upon initial assignment those parts of the fire prevention plan which the employee must know to protect the employee in the event of an emergency. The written plan shall be kept in the workplace and made available for employee review. For those employers with 10 or fewer employees, the plan may be communicated orally to employees and the employer need not maintain a written plan.

(e) Maintenance. The employer shall regularly and properly maintain, according to established procedures, equipment and systems installed in the workplace to prevent accidental ignition of combustible materials.

NOTE: Authority and reference cited: Section 142.3, Labor Code.

HISTORY

1. New section filed 9-8-81; effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 81, No. 37). For prior history, see Registers 77, No. 20; 76, No. 29; and 75, No. 25.

Go Back to Article 2 Table of Contents

This information is provided free of charge by the Department of Industrial Relations from its web site at www.dir.ca.gov. These regulations are for the convenience of the user and no representation or warranty is made that the information is current or accurate. See full disclaimer at https://www.dir.ca.gov/od_pub/disclaimer.html.

Return to index
New query

---

§5144. Respiratory Protection.

Guide to Respiratory Protection at Work

(a) Permissible practice.

(1) In the control of those occupational diseases caused by breathing air contaminated with harmful dusts, fogs, fumes, mists, gases, smokes, sprays, or vapors, the primary objective shall be to prevent atmospheric contamination. This shall be accomplished as far as feasible by accepted engineering control measures (for example, enclosure or confinement of the operation, general and local ventilation, and substitution of less toxic materials). When effective engineering controls are not feasible, or while they are being instituted, appropriate respirators shall be used pursuant to this section.

(2) Respirators shall be provided by the employer when such equipment is necessary to protect the health of the employee. The employer shall provide the respirators which are applicable and suitable for the purpose intended. The employer shall be responsible for the establishment and maintenance of a respiratory protection program which shall include the requirements outlined in subsection (c).

(b) Definitions. The following definitions are important terms used in the respiratory protection standard in this section.

Air-purifying respirator means a respirator with an air-purifying filter, cartridge, or canister that removes specific air contaminants by passing ambient air through the air-purifying element.

Assigned protection factor (APF) means the workplace level of respiratory protection that a respirator or class of respirators is expected to provide to employees when the employer implements a continuing, effective respiratory protection program as specified by this section.

Atmosphere-supplying respirator means a respirator that supplies the respirator user with breathing air from a source independent of the ambient atmosphere, and includes supplied-air respirators (SARs) and self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA) units.

Canister or cartridge means a container with a filter, sorbent, or catalyst, or combination of these items, which removes specific contaminants from the air passed through the container.

Demand respirator means an atmosphere-supplying respirator that admits breathing air to the facepiece only when a negative pressure is created inside the facepiece by inhalation.

Emergency situation means any occurrence such as, but not limited to, equipment failure, rupture of containers, or failure of control equipment that may or does result in an uncontrolled significant release of an airborne contaminant.

Employee exposure means exposure to a concentration of an airborne contaminant that would occur if the employee were not using respiratory protection.

End-of-service-life indicator (ESLI) means a system that warns the respirator user of the approach of the end of adequate respiratory protection, for example, that the sorbent is approaching saturation or is no longer effective.

Escape-only respirator means a respirator intended to be used only for emergency exit.

Filter or air purifying element means a component used in respirators to remove solid or liquid aerosols from the inspired air.

Filtering facepiece (dust mask) means a negative pressure particulate respirator with a filter as an integral part of the facepiece or with the entire facepiece composed of the filtering medium.

Fit factor means a quantitative estimate of the fit of a particular respirator to a specific individual, and typically estimates the ratio of the concentration of a substance in ambient air to its concentration inside the respirator when worn.

Fit test means the use of a protocol to qualitatively or quantitatively evaluate the fit of a respirator on an individual. (See also Qualitative fit test QLFT and Quantitative fit test QNFT.)

Helmet means a rigid respiratory inlet covering that also provides head protection against impact and penetration.

High efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filter means a filter that is at least 99.97% efficient in removing monodisperse particles of 0.3 micrometers in diameter. The equivalent NIOSH 42 CFR 84 particulate filters are the N100, R100, and P100 filters.

Hood means a respiratory inlet covering that completely covers the head and neck and may also cover portions of the shoulders and torso.

Immediately dangerous to life or health (IDLH) means an atmosphere that poses an immediate threat to life, would cause irreversible adverse health effects, or would impair an individual's ability to escape from a dangerous atmosphere.

Interior structural firefighting means the physical activity of fire suppression, rescue or both, inside of buildings or enclosed structures which are involved in a fire situation beyond the incipient stage. (See Article 10.1)

Loose-fitting facepiece means a respiratory inlet covering that is designed to form a partial seal with the face.

Maximum use concentration (MUC) means the maximum atmospheric concentration of a hazardous substance from which an employee can be expected to be protected when wearing a respirator, and is determined by the assigned protection factor of the respirator or class of respirators and the exposure limit of the hazardous substance. The MUC can be determined mathematically by multiplying the assigned protection factor specified for a respirator by the required OSHA permissible exposure limit, short-term exposure limit, or ceiling limit. When no OSHA exposure limit is available for a hazardous substance, an employer must determine an MUC on the basis of relevant available information and informed professional judgment.

Negative pressure respirator (tight fitting) means a respirator in which the air pressure inside the facepiece is negative during inhalation with respect to the ambient air pressure outside the respirator.

Oxygen deficient atmosphere means an atmosphere with an oxygen content below 19.5% by volume.

Physician or other licensed health care professional (PLHCP) means an individual whose legally permitted scope or practice (i.e., license, registration, or certification) allows him or her to independently provide, or be delegated the responsibility to provide, some or all of the health care services required by subsection (e).

Positive pressure respirator means a respirator in which the pressure inside the respiratory inlet covering exceeds the ambient air pressure outside the respirator.

Powered air-purifying respirator (PAPR) means an air-purifying respirator that uses a blower to force the ambient air through air-purifying elements to the inlet covering.

Pressure demand respirator means a positive pressure atmosphere-supplying respirator that admits breathing air to the facepiece when the positive pressure is reduced inside the facepiece by inhalation.

Qualitative fit test (QLFT) means a pass/fail fit test to assess the adequacy of respirator fit that relies on the individual's response to the test agent.

Quantitative fit test (QNFT) means an assessment of the adequacy of respirator fit by numerically measuring the amount of leakage into the respirator.

Respiratory inlet covering means that portion of a respirator that forms the protective barrier between the user's respiratory tract and an air-purifying device or breathing air source, or both. It may be a facepiece, helmet, hood, suit, or a mouthpiece respirator with nose clamp.

Self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA) means an atmosphere-supplying respirator for which the breathing air source is designed to be carried by the user.

Service life means the period of time that a respirator, filter or sorbent, or other respiratory equipment provides adequate protection to the wearer.

Supplied-air respirator (SAR) or airline respirator means an atmosphere-supplying respirator for which the source of breathing air is not designed to be carried by the user.

Tight-fitting facepiece means a respiratory inlet covering that forms a complete seal with the face.

User seal check means an action conducted by the respirator user to determine if the respirator is properly seated to the face.

(c) Respiratory protection program. This subsection requires the employer to develop and implement a written respiratory protection program with required worksite-specific procedures and elements for required respirator use. The program must be administered by a suitably trained program administrator. In addition, certain program elements may be required for voluntary use to prevent potential hazards associated with the use of the respirator. The Small Entity Compliance Guide contains criteria for the selection of a program administrator and a sample program that meets the requirements of this subsection. Copies of the Small Entity Compliance Guide will be available from the Occupational Safety and Health Administration's Office of Publications, Room N 3101, 200 Constitution Avenue, NW, Washington, DC, 20210 (202-219-4667).

(1) In any workplace where respirators are necessary to protect the health of the employee or whenever respirators are required by the employer, the employer shall establish and implement a written respiratory protection program with worksite-specific procedures. The program shall be updated as necessary to reflect those changes in workplace conditions that affect respirator use. The employer shall include in the program the following provisions, as applicable:

(A) Procedures for selecting respirators for use in the workplace;

(B) Medical evaluations of employees required to use respirators;

(C) Fit testing procedures for tight-fitting respirators;

(D) Procedures for proper use of respirators in routine and reasonably foreseeable emergency situations;

(E) Procedures and schedules for cleaning, disinfecting, storing, inspecting, repairing, discarding, and otherwise maintaining respirators;

(F) Procedures to ensure adequate air quality, quantity, and flow of breathing air for atmosphere-supplying respirators;

(G) Training of employees in the respiratory hazards to which they are potentially exposed during routine and emergency situations;

(H) Training of employees in the proper use of respirators, including putting on and removing them, any limitations on their use, and their maintenance; and

(I) Procedures for regularly evaluating the effectiveness of the program.

(2) Where respirator use is not required:

(A) An employer may provide respirators at the request of employees or permit employees to use their own respirators, if the employer determines that such respirator use will not in itself create a hazard. If the employer determines that any voluntary respirator use is permissible, the employer shall provide the respirator users with the information contained in Appendix D to this section ("Information for Employees Using Respirators When Not Required Under the Standard"); and

(B) In addition, the employer must establish and implement those elements of a written respiratory protection program necessary to ensure that any employee using a respirator voluntarily is medically able to use that respirator, and that the respirator is cleaned, stored, and maintained so that its use does not present a health hazard to the user. Exception: Employers are not required to include in a written respiratory protection program those employees whose only use of respirators involves the voluntary use of filtering facepieces (dust masks).

(3) The employer shall designate a program administrator who is qualified by appropriate training or experience that is commensurate with the complexity of the program to administer or oversee the respiratory protection program and conduct the required evaluations of program effectiveness.

(4) The employer shall provide respirators, training, and medical evaluations at no cost to the employee.

(d) Selection of respirators. This subsection requires the employer to evaluate respiratory hazard(s) in the workplace, identify relevant workplace and user factors, and base respirator selection on these factors. The subsection also specifies appropriately protective respirators for use in IDLH atmospheres, and limits the selection and use of air-purifying respirators.

(1) General requirements.

(A) The employer shall select and provide an appropriate respirator based on the respiratory hazard(s) to which the worker is exposed and workplace and user factors that affect respirator performance and reliability.

(B) The employer shall select a NIOSH-certified respirator. The respirator shall be used in compliance with the conditions of its certification.

(C) The employer shall identify and evaluate the respiratory hazard(s) in the workplace; this evaluation shall include a reasonable estimate of employee exposures to respiratory hazard(s) and an identification of the contaminant's chemical state and physical form. Where the employer cannot identify or reasonably estimate the employee exposure, the employer shall consider the atmosphere to be IDLH.

(D) The employer shall select respirators from a sufficient number of respirator models and sizes so that the respirator is acceptable to, and correctly fits, the user.

(2) Respirators for IDLH atmospheres.

(A) The employer shall provide the following respirators for employee use in IDLH atmospheres:

1. A full facepiece pressure demand SCBA certified by NIOSH for a minimum service life of thirty minutes, or

2. A combination full facepiece pressure demand supplied-air respirator (SAR) with auxiliary self-contained air supply.

(B) Respirators provided only for escape from IDLH atmospheres shall be NIOSH-certified for escape from the atmosphere in which they will be used.

(C) All oxygen-deficient atmospheres shall be considered IDLH.

Exception: If the employer demonstrates that, under all foreseeable conditions, the oxygen concentration can be maintained within the ranges specified in Table II (i.e., for the altitudes set out in the table), then any atmosphere-supplying respirator may be used.

(3) Respirators for atmospheres that are not IDLH.

(A) The employer shall provide a respirator that is adequate to protect the health of the employee and ensure compliance with all other OSHA statutory and regulatory requirements, under routine and reasonably foreseeable emergency situations.

1. Assigned Protection Factors (APFs) Employers must use the assigned protection factors listed in Table 1 to select a respirator that meets or exceeds the required level of employee protection. When using a combination respirator (e.g., airline respirators with an air-purifying filter), employers must ensure that the assigned protection factor is appropriate to the mode of operation in which the respirator is being used.

Table 1. - Assigned Protection Factors [5]

Type of respirator [1,2]	*Quarter mask*	*Half mask*	*Full facepiece*	*Helmet/hood*	*Loose-fitting facepiece*
1. Air-Purifying Respirator	5	[3] 10	50	......	......
2. Powered Air-Purifying Respirator (PAPR)		50	1,000	[4] 25/1,000	25
3. Supplied-Air Respirator (SAR) or Airline Respirator					
Demand mode	......	10	50	......	......
Continuous flow mode	......	50	1,000	[4] 25/1,000	25
Pressure-demand or other positive-pressure mode	......	50	1000	......	......
4. Self-Contained Breating Apparatus (SCBA)					
Demand mode	......	10	50	50	......
Pressure-demand or other positive-pressure mode (e.g., open/closed circuit).	......		10,000	10,000	......
Notes:					
1. Employers may select respirators assigned for use in higher workplace concentrations of a hazardous substance for use at lower concentrations of that substance, or when required respirator use is independent of concentration.					
2. The assigned protection factors in Table 1 are only effective when the employer implements a continuing, effective respirator program as required by this section, including training, fit testing, maintenance, and use requirements.					
3. This APF category includes filtering facepieces, and half masks with elastomeric facepieces.					
4. The employer must have evidence provided by the respirator manufacturer that testing of these respirators demonstrates performance at a level of protection of 1,000 or greater to receive an APF of 1,000. This level of performance can best be demonstrated by performing a Workplace Protection Factor (WPF) or simulated WPF study or equivalent testing. Absent such testing, all other PAPRs and SARs with helmets/hoods are to be treated as loose-fitting facepiece respirators, and receive an APF of 25.					
5. These APFs do not apply to respirators used solely for escape. For escape respirators used in association with substances covered by substance-specific standards in Title 8, Division 1, Chapter4, Subchapters 4, 7, and 18, employers must refer to the appropriate substance-specific standards. Escape respirators for other IDLH atmospheres are specified by subsection (d)(2)(B).					

2. Maximum Use Concentration (MUC)

a. The employer must select a respirator for employee use that maintains the employee's exposure to the hazardous substance, when measured outside the respirator, at or below the MUC.

b. Employers must not apply MUCs to conditions that are immediately dangerous to life or health (IDLH); instead, they must use respirators listed for IDLH conditions in subsection (d)(2) of this section.

c. When the calculated MUC exceeds the IDLH level for a hazardous substance, or the performance limits of the cartridge or canister, then employers must set the maximum MUC at that lower limit.

(B) The respirator selected shall be appropriate for the chemical state and physical form of the contaminant.

(C) For protection against gases and vapors, the employer shall provide:

1. An atmosphere-supplying respirator, or

2. An air-purifying respirator, provided that:

a. The respirator is equipped with an end-of-service-life indicator (ESLI) certified by NIOSH for the contaminant; or

b. If there is no ESLI appropriate for conditions in the employer's workplace, the employer implements a change schedule for canisters and cartridges that is based on objective information or data that will ensure that canisters and cartridges are changed before the end of their service life. The employer shall describe in the respirator program the information and data relied upon and the basis for the canister and cartridge change schedule and the basis for reliance on the data.

(D) For protection against particulates, the employer shall provide:

1. An atmosphere-supplying respirator; or

2. An air-purifying respirator equipped with a filter certified by NIOSH under 30 CFR part 11 as a high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filter, or an air-purifying respirator equipped with a filter certified for particulates by NIOSH under 42 CFR part 84; or

3. For contaminants consisting primarily of particles with mass median aerodynamic diameters (MMAD) of at least 2 micrometers, an air-purifying respirator equipped with any filter certified for particulates by NIOSH.

Table I - Assigned Protection Factors [Reserved]

Table II

Altitude (ft.)	Oxygen deficient Atmospheres (% O_2) for which the employer may rely on atmosphere-supplying respirators
Less than 3,001	16.0-19.5
3.001-4,000	16.4-19.5
4,001-5,000	17.1-19.5
5,001-6,000	17.8-19.5
6,001-7,000	18.5-19.5
7,001-8,000 [1]	19.3-19.5

---

[1] Above 8,000 feet the exception does not apply. Oxygen-enriched breathing air must be supplied above 14,000 feet.

(e) Medical evaluation. Using a respirator may place a physiological burden on employees that varies with the type of respirator worn, the job and workplace conditions in which the respirator is used, and the medical status of the employee. Accordingly, this subsection specifies the minimum requirements for medical evaluation that employers must implement to determine the employee's ability to use a respirator.

(1) General. The employer shall provide a medical evaluation to determine the employee's ability to use a respirator, before the employee is fit tested or required to use the respirator in the workplace. The employer may discontinue an employee's medical evaluations when the employee is no longer required to use a respirator.

(2) Medical evaluation procedures.

(A) The employer shall identify a physician or other licensed health care professional (PLHCP) to perform medical evaluations using a medical questionnaire or an initial medical examination that obtains the same information as the medical questionnaire.

(B) The medical evaluation shall obtain the information requested by the questionnaire in Sections 1 and 2, Part A of Appendix C.

Exception to subsection (e)(2)(B): For the use of filtering facepiece respirators for protection against M. Tuberculosis only, the employer may rely upon a medical evaluation completed prior to October 18, 2004, in meeting the requirement for initial medical evaluation, if that evaluation meets the following conditions:

1. The evaluation consisted of a questionnaire, medical examination, or both, evaluated or conducted by a PLHCP; and

2. The employer obtained a written statement from the evaluating PLHCP that the employee is medically able to use a respirator.

(3) Follow-up medical examination.

(A) The employer shall ensure that a follow-up medical examination is provided for an employee who gives a positive response to any question among questions 1 through 8 in Section 2, Part A of Appendix C or whose initial medical examination demonstrates the need for a follow-up medical examination.

(B) The follow-up medical examination shall include any medical tests, consultations, or diagnostic procedures that the PLHCP deems necessary to make a final determination.

(4) Administration of the medical questionnaire and examinations.

(A) The medical questionnaire and examinations shall be administered confidentially during the employee's normal working hours or at a time and place convenient to the employee. The medical questionnaire shall be administered in a manner that ensures that the employee understands its content.

(B) The employer shall provide the employee with an opportunity to discuss the questionnaire and examination results with the PLHCP.

(5) Supplemental information for the PLHCP.

(A) The following information must be provided to the PLHCP before the PLHCP makes a recommendation concerning an employee's ability to use a respirator:

1. The type and weight of the respirator to be used by the employee;

2. The duration and frequency of respirator use (including use for rescue and escape);

3. The expected physical work effort;

4. Additional protective clothing and equipment to be worn; and

5. Temperature and humidity extremes that may be encountered.

(B) Any supplemental information provided previously to the PLHCP regarding an employee need not be provided for a subsequent medical evaluation if the information and the PLHCP remain the same.

(C) The employer shall provide the PLHCP with a copy of the written respiratory protection program and a copy of this section.

Note to Subsection (e)(5)(C): When the employer replaces a PLHCP, the employer must ensure that the new PLHCP obtains this information, either by providing the documents directly to the PLHCP or having the documents transferred from the former PLHCP to the new PLHCP. However, OSHA does not expect employers to have employees medically reevaluated solely because a new PLHCP has been selected.

(6) Medical determination. In determining the employee's ability to use a respirator, the employer shall:

(A) Obtain a written recommendation regarding the employee's ability to use the respirator from the PLHCP. The recommendation shall provide only the following information:

1. Any limitations on respirator use related to the medical condition of the employee, or relating to the workplace conditions in which the respirator will be used, including whether or not the employee is medically able to use the respirator;

2. The need, if any, for follow-up medical evaluations; and

3. A statement that the PLHCP has provided the employee with a copy of the PLHCP's written recommendation.

(B) If the respirator is a negative pressure respirator and the PLHCP finds a medical condition that may place the employee's health at increased risk if the respirator is used, the employer shall provide a PAPR if the PLHCP's medical evaluation finds that the employee can use such a respirator; if a subsequent medical evaluation finds that the employee is medically able to use a negative pressure respirator, then the employer is no longer required to provide a PAPR.

(7) Additional medical evaluations. At a minimum, the employer shall provide additional medical evaluations that comply with the requirements of this section if:

(A) An employee reports medical signs or symptoms that are related to ability to use a respirator;

(B) A PLHCP, supervisor, or the respirator program administrator informs the employer that an employee needs to be reevaluated;

(C) Information from the respiratory protection program, including observations made during fit testing and program evaluation, indicates a need for employee reevaluation; or

(D) A change occurs in workplace conditions (e.g., physical work effort, protective clothing, temperature) that may result in a substantial increase in the physiological burden placed on an employee.

(f) Fit testing. This subsection requires that, before an employee may be required to use any respirator with a negative or positive pressure tight-fitting facepiece, the employee must be fit tested with the same make, model, style, and size of respirator that will be used. This subsection specifies the kinds of fit tests allowed, the procedures for conducting them, and how the results of the fit tests must be used.

(1) The employer shall ensure that employees using a tight-fitting facepiece respirator pass an appropriate qualitative fit test (QLFT) or quantitative fit test (QNFT) as stated in this subsection.

(2) The employer shall ensure that an employee using a tight-fitting facepiece respirator is fit tested prior to initial use of the respirator, whenever a different respirator facepiece (size, style, model or make) is used, and at least annually thereafter.

(3) The employer shall conduct an additional fit test whenever the employee reports, or the employer, PLHCP, supervisor, or program administrator makes visual observations of, changes in the employee's physical condition that could affect respirator fit. Such conditions include, but are not limited to, facial scarring, dental changes, cosmetic surgery, or an obvious change in body weight.

(4) If after passing a QLFT or QNFT, the employee subsequently notifies the employer, program administrator, supervisor, or PLHCP that the fit of the respirator is unacceptable, the employee shall be given a reasonable opportunity to select a different respirator facepiece and to be retested.

(5) The fit test shall be administered using an OSHA-accepted QLFT or QNFT protocol. The OSHA-accepted QLFT and QNFT protocols and procedures are contained in Appendix A.

(6) QLFT may only be used to fit test negative pressure air-purifying respirators that must achieve a fit factor of 100 or less.

(7) If the fit factor, as determined through an OSHA-accepted QNFT protocol, is equal to or greater than 100 for tight-fitting half facepieces, or equal to or greater than 500 for tight-fitting full facepieces, the QNFT has been passed with that respirator.

(8) Fit testing of tight-fitting atmosphere-supplying respirators and tight-fitting powered air-purifying respirators shall be accomplished by performing quantitative or qualitative fit testing in the negative pressure mode, regardless of the mode of operation (negative or positive pressure) that is used for respiratory protection.

(A) Qualitative fit testing of these respirators shall be accomplished by temporarily converting the respirator user's actual facepiece into a negative pressure respirator with appropriate filters, or by using an identical negative pressure air-purifying respirator facepiece with the same sealing surfaces as a surrogate for the atmosphere-supplying or powered air-purifying respirator facepiece.

(B) Quantitative fit testing of these respirators shall be accomplished by modifying the facepiece to allow sampling inside the facepiece in the breathing zone of the user, midway between the nose and mouth. This requirement shall be accomplished by installing a permanent sampling probe onto a surrogate facepiece, or by using a sampling adapter designed to temporarily provide a means of sampling air from inside the facepiece.

(C) Any modifications to the respirator facepiece for fit testing shall be completely removed, and the facepiece restored to NIOSH-approved configuration, before that facepiece can be used in the workplace.

(g) Use of respirators. This subsection requires employers to establish and implement procedures for the proper use of respirators. These requirements include prohibiting conditions that may result in facepiece seal leakage, preventing employees from removing respirators in hazardous environments, taking actions to ensure continued effective respirator operation throughout the work shift, and establishing procedures for the use of respirators in IDLH atmospheres or in interior structural firefighting situations.

(1) Facepiece seal protection.

(A) The employer shall not permit respirators with tight-fitting facepieces to be worn by employees who have:

1. Facial hair that comes between the sealing surface of the facepiece and the face or that interferes with valve function; or

2. Any condition that interferes with the face-to-facepiece seal or valve function.

(B) If an employee wears corrective glasses or goggles or other personal protective equipment, the employer shall ensure that such equipment is worn in a manner that does not interfere with the seal of the facepiece to the face of the user.

(C) For all tight-fitting respirators, the employer shall ensure that employees perform a user seal check each time they put on the respirator using the procedures in Appendix B-1 or procedures recommended by the respirator manufacturer that the employer demonstrates are as effective as those in Appendix B-1.

(2) Continuing respirator effectiveness.

(A) Appropriate surveillance shall be maintained of work area conditions and degree of employee exposure or stress. When there is a change in work area conditions or degree of employee exposure or stress that may affect respirator effectiveness, the employer shall reevaluate the continued effectiveness of the respirator.

(B) The employer shall ensure that employees leave the respirator use area:

1. To wash their faces and respirator facepieces as necessary to prevent eye or skin irritation associated with respirator use; or

2. If they detect vapor or gas breakthrough, changes in breathing resistance, or leakage of the facepiece; or

3. To replace the respirator or the filter, cartridge, or canister elements.

(C) If the employee detects vapor or gas breakthrough, changes in breathing resistance, or leakage of the facepiece, the employer must replace or repair the respirator before allowing the employee to return to the work area.

(3) Procedures for IDLH atmospheres. For all IDLH atmospheres, the employer shall ensure that:

(A) One employee or, when needed, more than one employee is located outside the IDLH atmosphere;

(B) Visual, voice, or signal line communication is maintained between the employee(s) in the IDLH atmosphere and the employee(s) located outside the IDLH atmosphere;

(C) The employee(s) located outside the IDLH atmosphere are trained and equipped to provide effective emergency rescue;

(D) The employer or designee is notified before the employee(s) located outside the IDLH atmosphere enter the IDLH atmosphere to provide emergency rescue;

(E) The employer or designee authorized to do so by the employer, once notified, provides necessary assistance appropriate to the situation;

(F) Employee(s) located outside the IDLH atmospheres are equipped with:

1. Pressure demand or other positive pressure SCBAs, or a pressure demand or other positive pressure supplied-air respirator with auxiliary SBA; and either

2. Appropriate retrieval equipment for removing the employee(s) who enter(s) these hazardous atmospheres where retrieval equipment would contribute to the rescue of the employee(s) and would not increase the overall risk resulting from entry; or

3. Equivalent means for rescue where retrieval equipment is not required under subsection (g)(3)(F)2.

(4) Procedures for interior structural firefighting. In addition to the requirements set forth under subsection (g)(3), in interior structural fires, the employer shall ensure that:

(A) At least two employees enter the IDLH atmosphere and remain in visual or voice contact with one another at all times;

(B) At least two employees are located outside the IDLH atmosphere; and

(C) All employees engaged in interior structural firefighting use SCBAs.

Note 1 to subsection (g): One of the two individuals located outside the IDLH atmosphere may be assigned to an additional role, such as incident commander in charge of the emergency or safety officer, so long as this individual is able to perform assistance or rescue activities without jeopardizing the safety or health of any firefighter working at the incident.

Note 2 to subsection (g): Nothing in this section is meant to preclude firefighters from performing emergency rescue activities before an entire team has assembled.

(h) Maintenance and care of respirators. This subsection requires the employer to provide for the cleaning and disinfecting, storage, inspection, and repair of respirators used by employees.

(1) Cleaning and disinfecting. The employer shall provide each respirator user with a respirator that is clean, sanitary, and in good working order. The employer shall ensure that respirators are cleaned and disinfected using the procedures in Appendix B-2, or procedures recommended by the respirator manufacturer, provided that such procedures are of equivalent effectiveness. The respirators shall be cleaned and disinfected at the following intervals:

(A) Respirators issued for the exclusive use of an employee shall be cleaned and disinfected as often as necessary to be maintained in a sanitary condition;

(B) Respirators issued to more than one employee shall be cleaned and disinfected before being worn by different individuals;

(C) Respirators maintained for emergency use shall be cleaned and disinfected after each use; and

(D) Respirators used in fit testing and training shall be cleaned and disinfected after each use.

(2) Storage. The employer shall ensure that respirators are stored as follows:

(A) All respirators shall be stored to protect them from damage, contamination, dust, sunlight, extreme temperatures, excessive moisture, and damaging chemicals, and they shall be packed or stored to prevent deformation of the facepiece and exhalation valve.

(B) In addition to the requirements of subsection (h)(2)(A), emergency respirators shall be:

1. Kept accessible to the work area;

2. Stored in compartments or in covers that are clearly marked as containing emergency respirators; and

3. Stored in accordance with any applicable manufacturer instructions.

(3) Inspection.

(A) The employer shall ensure that respirators are inspected as follows:

1. All respirators used in routine situations shall be inspected before each use and during cleaning;

2. All respirators maintained for use in emergency situations shall be inspected at least monthly and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and shall be checked for proper function before and after each use; and

3. Emergency escape-only respirators shall be inspected before being carried into the workplace for use.

(B) The employer shall ensure that respirator inspections include the following:

1. A check of respirator function, tightness of connections, and the condition of the various parts including, but not limited to, the facepiece, head straps, valves, connecting tube, and cartridges, canisters or filters; and

2. A check of elastomeric parts for pliability and signs of deterioration.

(C) In addition to the requirements of subsections (h)(3)(A) and (B), self-contained breathing apparatus shall be inspected monthly. Air and oxygen cylinders shall be maintained in a fully charged state and shall be recharged when the pressure falls to 90% of the manufacturer's recommended pressure level. The employer shall determine that the regulator and warning devices function properly.

(D) For respirators maintained for emergency use, the employer shall:

1. Certify the respirator by documenting the date the inspection was performed, the name (or signature) of the person who made the inspection, the findings, required remedial action, and a serial number or other means of identifying the inspected respirator; and

2. Provide this information on a tag or label that is attached to the storage compartment for the respirator, is kept with the respirator, or is included in inspection reports stored as paper or electronic files. This information shall be maintained until replaced following a subsequent certification.

(4) Repairs. The employer shall ensure that respirators that fail an inspection or are otherwise found to be defective are removed from service, and are discarded or repaired or adjusted in accordance with the following procedures:

(A) Repairs or adjustments to respirators are to be made only by persons appropriately trained to perform such operations and shall use only the respirator manufacturer's NIOSH-approved parts designed for the respirator;

(B) Repairs shall be made according to the manufacturer's recommendations and specifications for the type and extent of repairs to be performed; and

(C) Reducing and admission valves, regulators, and alarms shall be adjusted or repaired only by the manufacturer or a technician trained by the manufacturer.

(i) Breathing air quality and use. This subsection requires the employer to provide employees using atmosphere-supplying respirators (supplied-air and SCBA) with breathing gases of high purity.

(1) The employer shall ensure that compressed air, compressed oxygen, liquid air, and liquid oxygen used for respiration accords with the following specifications:

(A) Compressed and liquid oxygen shall meet the United States Pharmacopoeia requirements for medical or breathing oxygen; and

(B) Compressed breathing air shall meet at least the requirements for Grade D breathing air described in ANSI/Compressed Gas Association Commodity Specification for Air, G-7.1-1989, to include:

1. Oxygen content (v/v) of 19.5-23.5%;

2. Hydrocarbon (condensed) content of 5 milligrams per cubic meter of air or less;

3. Carbon monoxide (CO) content of 10 ppm or less;

4. Carbon dioxide content of 1,000 ppm or less; and

5. Lack of noticeable odor.

(2) The employer shall ensure that compressed oxygen is not used in atmosphere-supplying respirators that have previously used compressed air.

(3) The employer shall ensure that oxygen concentrations greater than 23.5% are used only in equipment designed for oxygen service or distribution.

(4) The employer shall ensure that cylinders used to supply breathing air to respirators meet the following requirements:

(A) Cylinders are tested and maintained as prescribed in the Shipping Container Specification Regulations of the Department of Transportation (49 CFR part 180);

(B) Cylinders of purchased breathing air have a certificate of analysis from the supplier that the breathing air meets the requirements for Grade D breathing air; and

(C) The moisture content in the cylinder does not exceed a dew point of -50 deg. F (-45.6 deg. C) at 1 atmosphere pressure.

(D) The employer shall use only the respirator manufacturer's NIOSH approved breathing-gas containers, marked and maintained in accordance with the Quality Assurance provisions of the NIOSH approval for the SCBA as issued in accordance with the NIOSH respirator-certification standard at 42 CFR part 84.

(5) The employer shall ensure that compressors used to supply breathing air to respirators are constructed and situated so as to:

(A) Prevent entry of contaminated air into the air-supply system;

(B) Minimize moisture content so that the dew point at 1 atmosphere pressure is 10 degrees F (-5.56 deg. C) below the ambient temperature;

(C) Have suitable in-line air-purifying sorbent beds and filters to further ensure breathing air quality. Sorbent beds and filters shall be maintained and replaced or refurbished periodically following the manufacturer's instructions.

(D) Have a tag containing the most recent change date and the signature of the person authorized by the employer to perform the change. The tag shall be maintained at the compressor.

(6) For compressors that are not oil-lubricated, the employer shall ensure that carbon monoxide levels in the breathing air do not exceed 10 ppm.

(7) For oil lubricated compressors, the employer shall use a high-temperature or carbon monoxide alarm, or both, to monitor carbon monoxide levels. If only high-temperature alarms are used, the air supply shall be monitored at intervals sufficient to prevent carbon monoxide in the breathing air from exceeding 10 ppm.

(8) The employer shall ensure that breathing air couplings are incompatible with outlets for nonrespirable worksite air or other gas systems. No asphyxiating substance shall be introduced into breathing air lines.

(9) The employer shall use breathing gas containers marked in accordance with the NIOSH respirator certification standard, 42 CFR part 84.

(j) Identification of filters, cartridges, and canisters. The employer shall ensure that all filters, cartridges and canisters used in the workplace are labeled and color coded with the NIOSH approval label and that the label is not removed and remains legible.

(k) Training and information. This subsection requires the employer to provide effective training to employees who are required to use respirators. The training must be comprehensive, understandable, and recur annually, and more often if necessary. This subsection also requires the employer to provide the basic information on respirators in Appendix D to employees who wear respirators when not required by this section or by the employer to do so.

(1) The employer shall ensure that each employee can demonstrate knowledge of at least the following:

(A) Why the respirator is necessary and how improper fit, usage, or maintenance can compromise the protective effect of the respirator;

(B) What the limitations and capabilities of the respirator are;

(C) How to use the respirator effectively in emergency situations, including situations in which the respirator malfunctions;

(D) How to inspect, put on and remove, use, and check the seals of the respirator;

(E) What the procedures are for maintenance and storage of the respirator;

(F) How to recognize medical signs and symptoms that may limit or prevent the effective use of respirators; and

(G) The general requirements of this section.

(2) The training shall be conducted in a manner that is understandable to the employee.

(3) The employer shall provide the training prior to requiring the employee to use a respirator in the workplace.

(4) An employer who is able to demonstrate that a new employee has received training withing the last 12 months that addresses the elements specified in subsection (k)(1)(A) through (G) is not required to repeat such training provided that, as required by subsection (k)(1), the employee can demonstrate knowledge of those element(s). Previous training not repeated initially by the employer must be provided no later than 12 months from the date of the previous training.

(5) Retraining shall be administered annually, and when the following situations occur:

(A) Changes in the workplace or the type of respirator render previous training obsolete;

(B) Inadequacies in the employee's knowledge or use of the respirator indicate that the employee has not retained the requisite understanding or skill; or

(C) Any other situation arises in which retraining appears necessary to ensure safe respirator use.

(6) The basic advisory information on respirators, as presented in Appendix D, shall be provided by the employer in any written or oral format, to employees who wear respirators when such use is not required by this section or by the employer.

(l) Program evaluation. This section requires the employer to conduct evaluations of the workplace to ensure that the written respiratory protection program is being properly implemented, and to consult employees to ensure that they are using the respirators properly.

(1) The employer shall conduct evaluations of the workplace as necessary to ensure that the provisions of the current written program are being effectively implemented and that it continues to be effective.

(2) The employer shall regularly consult employees required to use respirators to assess the employees' views on program effectiveness and to identify any problems. Any problems that are identified during this assessment shall be corrected. Factors to be assessed include, but are not limited to:

(A) Respirator fit (including the ability to use the respirator without interfering with effective workplace performance);

(B) Appropriate respirator selection for the hazards to which the employee is exposed;

(C) Proper respirator use under the workplace conditions the employee encounters; and

(D) Proper respirator maintenance.

(m) Recordkeeping. This section requires the employer to establish and retain written information regarding medical evaluations, fit testing, and the respirator program. This information will facilitate employee involvement in the respirator program, assist the employer in auditing the adequacy of the program, and provide a record for compliance determinations by OSHA.

(1) Medical evaluation. Records of medical evaluations required by this section must be retained and made available in accordance with section 3204.

(2) Fit testing.

(A) The employer shall establish a record of the qualitative and quantitative fit tests administered to an employee including:

1. The name or identification of the employee tested;

2. Type of fit test performed;

3. Specific make, model, style, and size of respirator tested;

4. Date of test; and

5. The pass/fail results for QLFTs or the fit factor and strip chart recording or other recording of the test results for QNFTs.

(B) Fit test records shall be retained for respirator users until the next fit test is administered.

(3) A written copy of the current respirator program shall be retained by the employer.

(4) Written materials required to be retained under this subsection shall be made available upon request to affected employees and to the Chief or designee for examination and copying.

(n) Effective date. Subsections (d)(3)(A)1 and (d)(3)(A)2 of this section become effective March 6, 2007.

(o) Appendices. Compliance with Appendix A, Appendix B-1, Appendix B-2, Appendix C, and Appendix D is mandatory.

Note: Authority cited: Section 142.3, Labor Code. Reference: Section 142.3, Labor Code.

HISTORY

1. Repealer and new section filed 7-12-74; effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 74, No. 28).

2. Amendment filed 7-27-77; effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 77, No. 31).

3. Amendment of subsection (g) filed 9-14-78; effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 78, No. 37).

4. Amendment of subsection (e)(1) filed 5-25-79; effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 79, No. 21).

5. Amendment of subsection (e)(1) filed 10-18-79; effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 79, No. 42).

6. Amendment of subsection (d) filed 9-11-80; effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 80, No. 37).

7. Amendment of subsection (f)(2) filed 7-8-85; effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 85, No. 28).

8. HISTORY NOTE No. 7 omitted from Register 85, No. 28 due to printing plant error (Register 85, No. 38).

9. Amendment of subsection (h) filed 3-20-95; operative 4-19-95 (Register 95, No. 12).

10. Amendment of subsection (e)(3) filed 6-29-95; operative 7-29-95 (Register 95, No. 26).

11. Renumbering of former section 5144 to section 5147 and new section filed 8-25-98; operative 11-23-98 (Register 98, No. 35).

12. Change without regulatory effect amending designator for subsection (e)(7) filed 3-15-99 pursuant to section 100, title 1, California Code of Regulations (Register 2000, No. 4).

13. Editorial correction of subsection (h)(4)(A) (Register 2002, No. 46).

14. New exceptions to subsections (e)(2)(B) and (f)(2) filed 10-7-2004 as an emergency; operative 10-7-2004 (Register 2004, No. 41). A Certificate of Compliance must be transmitted to OAL by 2-4-2005 or emergency language will be repealed by operation of law on the following day.

15. Certificate of Compliance as to 3-7-2005 order, including further amendment of exception to subsection (e)(2)(B) and repealer of exception to subsection (f)(2), transmitted to OAL 1-21-2005 and filed 3-7-2005 (Register 2005, No. 10).

16. Amendment of subsections (b), (d)(3)(A)1.-2. and (n) and repealer of subsections (n)(1)-(3) filed 3-6-2007; operative 3-6-2007. Submitted to OAL for printing only pursuant to Labor Code section 142.3(a)(3) (Register 2007, No. 10).

17. Amendment of subsection (i)(4)(A) and new subsection (i)(4)(D) filed 1-18-2012; operative 1-18-2012 pursuant to Labor Code section 142.3(a)(4)(C). Submitted to OAL for printing only pursuant to Labor Code section 142.3(a)(3) (Register 2012, No. 3).

Go Back to Article 107 Table of Contents

This information is provided free of charge by the Department of Industrial Relations from its web site at www.dir.ca.gov. These regulations are for the convenience of the user and no representation or warranty is made that the information is current or accurate. See full disclaimer at https://www.dir.ca.gov/od_pub/disclaimer.html.

Subchapter 7. General Industry Safety Orders
Group 16. Control of Hazardous Substances
Article 109. Hazardous Substances and Processes

Return to index
New query

---

§ 5193. Bloodborne Pathogens.

Exposure Control Plan for Bloodborne Pathogens

A Best Practices Approach for Reducing Bloodborne Pathogens Exposure

Safe needle fact sheet

(a) Scope and Application. This section applies to all occupational exposure to blood or other potentially infectious materials as defined by subsection (b) of this section.

EXCEPTION: This regulation does not apply to the construction industry.

(b) Definitions. For purposes of this section, the following shall apply:

"Biological Cabinet" means a device enclosed except for necessary exhaust purposes on three sides and top and bottom, designed to draw air inward by means of mechanical ventilation, operated with insertion of only the hands and arms of the user, and in which virulent pathogens are used. Biological cabinets are classified as:

(1) Class I: A ventilated cabinet for personnel protection with an unrecirculated inward airflow away from the operator and high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtered exhaust air for environmental protection.

(2) Class II: A ventilated cabinet for personnel, product, and environmental protection having an open front with inward airflow for personnel protection, HEPA filtered laminar airflow for product protection, and HEPA filtered exhaust air for environmental protection.

(3) Class III: A total enclosed, ventilated cabinet of gas-tight construction. Operations in the cabinet are conducted through attached protective gloves.

"Blood" means human blood, human blood components, and products made from human blood.

"Bloodborne Pathogens" means pathogenic microorganisms that are present in human blood and can cause disease in humans. These pathogens include, but are not limited to, hepatitis B virus (HBV), hepatitis C virus (HCV) and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV).

"Chief" means the Chief of the Division of Occupational Safety and Health of the California Department of Industrial Relations or designated representative.

"Clinical Laboratory" means a workplace where diagnostic or other screening procedures are performed on blood or other potentially infectious materials.

"Contaminated" means the presence or the reasonably anticipated presence of blood or other potentially infectious materials on a surface or in or on an item.

"Contaminated Laundry" means laundry which has been soiled with blood or other potentially infectious materials or may contain sharps.

"Decontamination" means the use of physical or chemical means to remove, inactivate, or destroy bloodborne pathogens on a surface or item to the point where they are no longer capable of transmitting infectious particles and the surface or item is rendered safe for handling, use, or disposal. Decontamination includes procedures regulated by Health and Safety Code Section 118275.

"Engineering Controls" means controls (e.g., sharps disposal containers, needlelesss systems and sharps with engineered sharps injury protection) that isolate or remove the bloodborne pathogens hazard from the workplace.

"Engineered Sharps Injury Protection" means either:

(1) A physical attribute built into a needle device used for withdrawing body fluids, accessing a vein or artery, or administering medications or other fluids, which effectively reduces the risk of an exposure incident by a mechanism such as barrier creation, blunting, encapsulation, withdrawal or other effective mechanisms; or

(2) A physical attribute built into any other type of needle device, or into a non-needle sharp, which effectively reduces the risk of an exposure incident.

"Exposure Incident" means a specific eye, mouth, other mucous membrane, non-intact skin, or parenteral contact with blood or other potentially infectious materials that results from the performance of an employee's duties.

"Handwashing Facilities" means a facility providing an adequate supply of running potable water, soap and single use towels or hot air drying machines.

"HBV" means hepatitis B virus.

"HCV" means hepatitis C virus.

"HIV" means human immunodeficiency virus.

"Licensed Healthcare Professional" is a person whose licensed scope of practice includes an activity which this section requires to be performed by a licensed healthcare professional.

"Needle" or "Needle Device" means a needle of any type, including, but not limited to, solid and hollow-bore needles.

"Needleless System" means a device that does not utilize needles for:

(1) The withdrawal of body fluids after initial venous or arterial access is established;

(2) The administration of medication or fluids; and

(3) Any other procedure involving the potential for an exposure incident.

"NIOSH" means the Director of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, or designated representative.

"Occupational Exposure" means reasonably anticipated skin, eye, mucous membrane, or parenteral contact with blood or other potentially infectious materials that may result from the performance of an employee's duties.

"One-Hand Technique" means a procedure wherein the needle of a reusable syringe is capped in a sterile manner during use. The technique employed shall require the use of only the hand holding the syringe so that the free hand is not exposed to the uncapped needle.

"OPIM" means other potentially infectious materials.

"Other Potentially Infectious Materials" means:

(1) The following human body fluids: semen, vaginal secretions, cerebrospinal fluid, synovial fluid, pleural fluid, pericardial fluid, peritoneal fluid, amniotic fluid, saliva in dental procedures, any other body fluid that is visibly contaminated with blood such as saliva or vomitus, and all body fluids in situations where it is difficult or impossible to differentiate between body fluids such as emergency response;

(2) Any unfixed tissue or organ (other than intact skin) from a human (living or dead); and

(3) Any of the following, if known or reasonably likely to contain or be infected with HIV, HBV, or HCV:

(A) Cell, tissue, or organ cultures from humans or experimental animals;

(B) Blood, organs, or other tissues from experimental animals; or

(C) Culture medium or other solutions.

"Parenteral Contact" means piercing mucous membranes or the skin barrier through such events as needlesticks, human bites, cuts, and abrasions.

"Personal Protective Equipment" is specialized clothing or equipment worn or used by an employee for protection against a hazard. General work clothes (e.g., uniforms, pants, shirts or blouses) not intended to function as protection against a hazard are not considered to be personal protective equipment.

"Production Facility" means a facility engaged in industrial-scale, large-volume or high concentration production of HIV, HBV or HCV.

"Regulated Waste" means waste that is any of the following:

(1) Liquid or semi-liquid blood or OPIM;

(2) Contaminated items that:

(A) Contain liquid or semi-liquid blood, or are caked with dried blood or OPIM; and

(B) Are capable of releasing these materials when handled or compressed.

(3) Contaminated sharps.

(4) Pathological and microbiological wastes containing blood or OPIM.

(5) Regulated Waste includes "medical waste" regulated by Health and Safety Code Sections 117600 through 118360.

"Research Laboratory" means a laboratory producing or using research-laboratory-scale amounts of HIV, HBV or HCV. Research laboratories may produce high concentrations of HIV, HBV or HCV but not in the volume found in production facilities.

"Sharp" means any object used or encountered in the industries covered by subsection (a) that can be reasonably anticipated to penetrate the skin or any other part of the body, and to result in an exposure incident, including, but not limited to, needle devices, scalpels, lancets, broken glass, broken capillary tubes, exposed ends of dental wires and dental knives, drills and burs.

"Sharps Injury" means any injury caused by a sharp, including, but not limited to, cuts, abrasions, or needlesticks.

"Sharps Injury Log" means a written or electronic record satisfying the requirements of subsection (c)(2).

"Source Individual" means any individual, living or dead, whose blood or OPIM may be a source of occupational exposure to the employee. Examples include, but are not limited to, hospital and clinical patients; clients in institutions for the developmentally disabled; trauma victims; clients of drug and alcohol treatment facilities; residents of hospices and nursing homes; human remains; and individuals who donate or sell blood or blood components.

"Universal Precautions" is an approach to infection control. According to the concept of Universal Precautions, all human blood and certain human body fluids are treated as if known to be infectious for HIV, HBV, HCV, and other bloodborne pathogens.

"Work Practice Controls" means controls that reduce the likelihood of exposure by defining the manner in which a task is performed (e.g., prohibiting recapping of needles by a two-handed technique and use of patient-handling techniques).

(c) Exposure Response, Prevention and Control.

(1) Exposure Control Plan.

(A) Each employer having an employee(s) with occupational exposure as defined by subsection (b) of this section shall establish, implement and maintain an effective Exposure Control Plan which is designed to eliminate or minimize employee exposure and which is also consistent with Section 3203.

(B) The Exposure Control Plan shall be in writing and shall contain at least the following elements:

1. The exposure determination required by subsection (c)(3);

2. The schedule and method of implementation for each of the applicable subsections: (d) Methods of Compliance, (e) HIV, HBV and HCV Research Laboratories and Production Facilities, (f) Hepatitis B Vaccination and Post-exposure Evaluation and Follow-up, (g) Communication of Hazards to Employees, and (h) Recordkeeping, of this standard;

3. The procedure for the evaluation of circumstances surrounding exposure incidents as required by subsection (f)(3)(A).

4. An effective procedure for gathering the information required by the Sharps Injury Log.

5. An effective procedure for periodic determination of the frequency of use of the types and brands of sharps involved in the exposure incidents documented on the Sharps Injury Log;

NOTE: Frequency of use may be approximated by any reasonable and effective method.

6. An effective procedure for identifying currently available engineering controls, and selecting such controls, where appropriate, for the procedures performed by employees in their respective work areas or departments;

7. An effective procedure for documenting patient safety determinations made pursuant to Exception 2. of subsection (d)(3)(A); and

8. An effective procedure for obtaining the active involvement of employees in reviewing and updating the exposure control plan with respect to the procedures performed by employees in their respective work areas or departments.

(C) Each employer shall ensure that a copy of the Exposure Control Plan is accessible to employees in accordance with Section 3204(e).

(D) The Exposure Control Plan shall be reviewed and updated at least annually and whenever necessary as follows:

1. To reflect new or modified tasks and procedures which affect occupational exposure;

2.a. To reflect changes in technology that eliminate or reduce exposure to bloodborne pathogens; and

b. To document consideration and implementation of appropriate commercially available needleless systems and needle devices and sharps with engineered sharps injury protection;

3. To include new or revised employee positions with occupational exposure;

4. To review and evaluate the exposure incidents which occurred since the previous update; and

5. To review and respond to information indicating that the Exposure Control Plan is deficient in any area.

(E) Employees responsible for direct patient care. In addition to complying with subsections (c)(1)(B)6. and (c)(1)(B)8., the employer shall solicit input from non-managerial employees responsible for direct patient care who are potentially exposed to injuries from contaminated sharps in the identification, evaluation, and selection of effective engineering and work practice controls, and shall document the solicitation in the Exposure Control Plan.

(F) The Exposure Control Plan shall be made available to the Chief or NIOSH or their respective designee upon request for examination and copying.

(2) Sharps Injury Log.

The employer shall establish and maintain a Sharps Injury Log, which is a record of each exposure incident involving a sharp. The information recorded shall include the following information, if known or reasonably available:

(A) Date and time of the exposure incident;

(B) Type and brand of sharp involved in the exposure incident;

(C) A description of the exposure incident which shall include:

1. Job classification of the exposed employee;

2. Department or work area where the exposure incident occurred;

3. The procedure that the exposed employee was performing at the time of the incident;

4. How the incident occurred;

5. The body part involved in the exposure incident;

6. If the sharp had engineered sharps injury protection, whether the protective mechanism was activated, and whether the injury occurred before the protective mechanism was activated, during activation of the mechanism or after activation of the mechanism, if applicable;

7. If the sharp had no engineered sharps injury protection, the injured employee's opinion as to whether and how such a mechanism could have prevented the injury; and

8. The employee's opinion about whether any engineering, administrative or work practice control could have prevented the injury.

(D) Each exposure incident shall be recorded on the Sharps Injury Log within 14 working days of the date the incident is reported to the employer.

(E) The information in the Sharps Injury Log shall be recorded and maintained in such a manner as to protect the confidentiality of the injured employee.

(3) Exposure Determination.

(A) Each employer who has an employee(s) with occupational exposure as defined by subsection (b) of this section shall prepare an exposure determination. This exposure determination shall contain the following:

1. A list of all job classifications in which all employees in those job classifications have occupational exposure;

2. A list of job classifications in which some employees have occupational exposure; and

3. A list of all tasks and procedures or groups of closely related task and procedures in which occupational exposure occurs and that are performed by employees in job classifications listed in accordance with the provisions of subsection (c)(3)(A)2. of this standard.

(B) This exposure determination shall be made without regard to the use of personal protective equipment.

(d) Methods of Compliance.

(1) General. Universal precautions shall be observed to prevent contact with blood or OPIM. Under circumstances in which differentiation between body fluid types is difficult or impossible, all body fluids shall be considered potentially infectious materials.

(2) Engineering and Work Practice Controls -General Requirements.

(A) Engineering and work practice controls shall be used to eliminate or minimize employee exposure.

(B) Engineering controls shall be examined and maintained or replaced on a regular schedule to ensure their effectiveness.

(C) Work practice controls shall be evaluated and updated on a regular schedule to ensure their effectiveness.

(D) All procedures involving blood or OPIM shall be performed in such a manner as to minimize splashing, spraying, spattering, and generation of droplets of these substances.

(3) Engineering and Work Practice Controls -Specific Requirements.

(A) Needleless Systems, Needle Devices and non-Needle Sharps.

1. Needleless Systems. Needleless systems shall be used for:

a. Withdrawal of body fluids after initial venous or arterial access is established;

b. Administration of medications or fluids; and

c. Any other procedure involving the potential for an exposure incident for which a needleless system is available as an alternative to the use of needle devices.

2. Needle Devices. If needleless systems are not used, needles with engineered sharps injury protection shall be used for:

a. Withdrawal of body fluids;

b. Accessing a vein or artery;

c. Administration of medications or fluids; and

d. Any other procedure involving the potential for an exposure incident for which a needle device with engineered sharps injury protection is available.

3. Non-Needle Sharps. If sharps other than needle devices are used, these items shall include engineered sharps injury protection.

4. Exceptions. The following exceptions apply to the engineering controls required by subsections (d)(3)(A)1.-3.:

a. Market Availability. The engineering control is not required if it is not available in the marketplace.

b. Patient Safety. The engineering control is not required if a licensed healthcare professional directly involved in a patient's care determines, in the reasonable exercise of clinical judgement, that use of the engineering control will jeopardize the patient's safety or the success of a medical, dental or nursing procedure involving the patient. The determination shall be documented according to the procedure required by (c)(1)(B)7.

c. Safety Performance. The engineering control is not required if the employer can demonstrate by means of objective product evaluation criteria that the engineering control is not more effective in preventing exposure incidents than the alternative used by the employer.

d. Availability of Safety Performance Information. The engineering control is not required if the employer can demonstrate that reasonably specific and reliable information is not available on the safety performance of the engineering control for the employer's procedures, and that the employer is actively determining by means of objective product evaluation criteria whether use of the engineering control will reduce the risk of exposure incidents occurring in the employer's workplace.

(B) Prohibited Practices.

1. Shearing or breaking of contaminated needles and other contaminated sharps is prohibited.

2. Contaminated sharps shall not be bent, recapped, or removed from devices.

EXCEPTION: Contaminated sharps may be bent, recapped or removed from devices if: a. The employer can demonstrate that no alternative is feasible or that such action is required by a specific medical or dental procedure; and b. The procedure is performed using a mechanical device or a one-handed technique.

3. Sharps that are contaminated with blood or OPIM shall not be stored or processed in a manner that requires employees to reach by hand into the containers where these sharps have been placed.

4. Disposable sharps shall not be reused.

5. Broken Glassware. Broken glassware which may be contaminated shall not be picked up directly with the hands. It shall be cleaned up using mechanical means, such as a brush and dust pan, tongs, or forceps.

6. The contents of sharps containers shall not be accessed unless properly reprocessed or decontaminated.

7. Sharps containers shall not be opened, emptied, or cleaned manually or in any other manner which would expose employees to the risk of sharps injury.

8. Mouth pipetting/suctioning of blood or OPIM is prohibited.

9. Eating, drinking, smoking, applying cosmetics or lip balm, and handling contact lenses are prohibited in work areas where there is a reasonable likelihood of occupational exposure.

10. Food and drink shall not be kept in refrigerators, freezers, shelves, cabinets or on countertops or benchtops where blood or OPIM are present.

(C) Requirements for Handling Contaminated Sharps.

1. All procedures involving the use of sharps in connection with patient care, such as withdrawing body fluids, accessing a vein or artery, or administering vaccines, medications or fluids, shall be performed using effective patient-handling techniques and other methods designed to minimize the risk of a sharps injury.

2. Immediately or as soon as possible after use, contaminated sharps shall be placed in containers meeting the requirements of subsection (d)(3)(D) as applicable.

3. At all time during the use of sharps, containers for contaminated sharps shall be:

a. Easily accessible to personnel and located as close as is feasible to the immediate area where sharps are used or can be reasonably anticipated to be found (e.g., laundries);

b. Maintained upright throughout use, where feasible; and

c. Replaced as necessary to avoid overfilling.

(D) Sharps Containers for Contaminated Sharps.

1. All sharps containers for contaminated sharps shall be:

a. Rigid;

b. Puncture resistant;

c. Leakproof on the sides and bottom;

d. Portable, if portability is necessary to ensure easy access by the user as required by subsection (d)(3)(C)3.a.; and

e. Labeled in accordance with subsection (g)(1)(A)(2).

2. If discarded sharps are not to be reused, the sharps container shall also be closeable and sealable so that when sealed, the container is leak resistant and incapable of being reopened without great difficulty.

(E) Regulated Waste.

1. General.

Handling, storage, treatment and disposal of all regulated waste shall be in accordance with Health and Safety Code Chapter 6.1, Sections 117600 through 118360, and other applicable regulations of the United States, the State, and political subdivisions of the State.

2. Disposal of Sharps Containers.

When any container of contaminated sharps is moved from the area of use for the purpose of disposal, the container shall be:

a. Closed immediately prior to removal or replacement to prevent spillage or protrusion of contents during handling, storage, transport, or shipping; and

b. Placed in a secondary container if leakage is possible. The second container shall be:

i. Closable;

ii. Constructed to contain all contents and prevent leakage dur8ing handling, storage, transport, or shipping; and

iii. Labeled according to subsection (g)(1)(A) of this section.

3. Disposal of Other Regulated Waste. Regulated waste not consisting of sharps shall be disposed of in containers which are:

a. Closable;

b. Constructed to contain all contents and prevent leakage during handling, storage, transport, or shipping;

c. Labeled and color-coded in accordance with subsection (g)(1)(A) of this section; and

d. Closed prior to removal to prevent spillage or protrusion of contents during handling, storage, transport, or shipping.

4. Outside Contamination. If outside contamination of a container of regulated waste occurs, it shall be placed in a second container. The second container shall be:

a. Closable.

b. Constructed to contain all contents and prevent leakage of fluids during handling, storage, transport or shipping;

c. Labeled and color-coded in accordance with subsection (g)(1)(A) of this section; and

d. Closed prior to removal to prevent spillage or protrusion of contents during handling, storage, transport, or shipping.

(F) Handling Specimens of Blood or OPIM.

Specimens of blood or OPIM shall be placed in a container which prevents leakage during collection, handling, processing, storage, transport, or shipping.

1. The container for storage, transport, or shipping shall be labeled or color-coded according to subsection (g)(1)(A), and closed prior to being stored, transported, or shipped. When a ffacility utilizes Universal Precautions in the handling of all specimens, the labeling/color-coding of specimens is not necessary provided containers are recognizable as containing specimens. This exemption only applies while such specimens/containers remain within the facility. Labeling or color-coding in accordance with subsection (g)(1)(A) is required when such specimens/ containers leave the facility.

2. If outside contamination of the primary container occurs, the primary container shall be placed within a second container which prevents leakage during collection, handling, processing, storage, transport, or shipping and is labeled or color-coded to the requirements of this standard.

3. If the specimen could puncture the primary container, the primary container shall be placed within a secondary container which is puncture-resistant in addition to the above characteristics.

(G) Servicing or Shipping Contaminated Equipment.

Equipment which may become contaminated with blood or OPIM shall be examined prior to servicing or shipping and shall be decontaminated as necessary, unless the employer can demonstrate that decontamination of such equipment or portions of such equipment is not feasible or will interfere with a manufacturer's ability to evaluate failure of the device.

1. A readily observable label in accordance with subsection (g)(1)(A)8. shall be attached to the equipment stating which portions remain contaminated.

2. Information concerning all remaining contamination shall be conveyed to all affected employees, the servicing representative, and/or the manufacturer, as appropriate, prior to handling, servicing, or shipping so that appropriate precautions will be taken.

(H) Cleaning and Decontamination of the Worksite.

1. General Requirements.

a. Employers shall ensure that the worksite is maintained in a clean and sanitary condition.

b. Employers shall determine and implement appropriate written methods and schedules for cleaning and decontamination of the worksite.

c. The method of cleaning or decontamination used shall be effective and shall be appropriate for the:

i. Location within the facility;

ii. Type of surface or equipment to be treated;

iii. Type of soil or contamination present; and

iv. Tasks or procedures being performed in the area.

d. All equipment and environmental and work surfaces shall be cleaned and decontaminated after contact with blood or OPIM no later than at the end of the shift. Cleaning and decontamination of equipment and work surfaces is required more often as specified below.

2. Specific Requirements.

a. Contaminated Work Surfaces. Contaminated work surfaces shall be cleaned and decontaminated with an appropriate disinfectant immediately or as soon as feasible when:

i. Surfaces become overtly contaminated;

ii. There is a spill of blood or OPIM;

iii. Procedures are completed; and

iv. At the end of the work shift if the surface may have become contaminated since the last cleaning.

b. Receptacles. All bins, pails, cans, and similar receptacles intended for reuse which have a reasonable likelihood for becoming contaminated with blood or OPIM shall be inspected and decontaminated on a regularly scheduled basis and cleaned and decontaminated immediately or as soon as feasible upon visible contamination.

c. Protective Coverings. Protective coverings, such as plastic wrap, aluminum foil, or imperviously-backed absorbent paper used to cover equipment and environmental surfaces, shall be removed and replaced as soon as feasible when they become overtly contaminated or at the end of the workshift if they may have become contaminated during the shift.

(I) Hygiene.

1. Employers shall provide handwashing facilities which are readily accessible to employees.

2. When provision of handwashing facilities is not feasible, the employer shall provide either an appropriate antiseptic hand cleanser in conjunction with clean cloth/paper towels or antiseptic towelettes. When antiseptic hand cleansers or towelettes are used, hands shall be washed with soap and running water as soon as feasible.

3. Employers shall ensure that employees wash their hands immediately or as soon as feasible after removal of gloves or other personal protective equipment.

4. Employers shall ensure that employees wash hands and any other skin with soap and water, or flush mucous membranes with water immediately or as soon as feasible following contact of such body areas with blood or OPIM.

(J) Laundry.

1. Contaminated laundry shall be handled as little as possible with a minimum of agitation.

a. Contaminated laundry shall be bagged or containerized at the location where it was used and shall not be sorted or rinsed in the location of use.

b. Contaminated laundry shall be placed and transported in bags or containers labeled or color-coded in accordance with subsection (g)(1)(A) of this standard. When a facility utilizes Universal Precautions in the handling of all soiled laundry, alternative labeling or color-coding is sufficient if it permits all employees to recognize the containers as requiring compliance with Universal Precautions.

c. Whenever contaminated laundry is wet and presents a reasonable likelihood of soaking through or leakage from the bag or container, the laundry shall be placed and transported in bags or containers which prevent soak-through and/or leakage of fluids to the exterior.

2. The employer shall ensure that employees who have contact with contaminated laundry wear protective gloves and other appropriate personal protective equipment.

3. When a facility ships contaminated laundry off-site to a second facility which does not utilize Universal Precautions in the handling of all laundry, the facility generating the contaminated laundry must place such laundry in bags or containers which are labeled or color-coded in accordance with subsection (g)(1)(A).

(4) Personal Protective Equipment.

(A) Provision. Where occupational exposure remains after institution of engineering and work practice controls, the employer shall provide, at no cost to the employee, appropriate personal protective equipment such as, but not limited to, gloves, gowns, laboratory coats, face shields or masks and eye protection, and mouthpieces, resuscitation bags, pocket masks, or other ventilation devices. Personal protective equipment will be considered "appropriate" only if it does not permit blood or OPIM to pass through to or reach the employee's work clothes, street clothes, undergarments, skin, eyes, mouth, or other mucous membranes under normal conditions of use and for the duration of time which the protective equipment will be used.

NOTE: For fire fighters, these requirements are in addition to those specified in Sections 3401-3411, and are intended to be consistent with those requirements.

(B) Use. The employer shall ensure that the employee uses appropriate personal protective equipment unless the employer shows that the employee temporarily and briefly declined to use personal protective equipment when, under rare and extraordinary circumstances, it was the employee's professional judgment that in the specific instance its use would have prevented the delivery of health care or public safety services or would have posed an increased hazard to the safety of the worker or co-worker. When the employee makes this judgment, the circumstances shall be investigated and documented in order to determine whether changes can be instituted to prevent such occurences in the future. The employer shall encourage employees to report all such instances without fear of reprisal in accordance with Section 3203.

(C) Accessibility. The employer shall ensure that appropriate personal protective equipment in the appropriate sizes is readily accessible at the worksite or is issued to employees. Hypoallergenic gloves, glove liners, powderless gloves, or other similar alternatives shall be readily accessible to those employees who are allergic to the gloves normally provided.

(D) Cleaning, Laundering, and Disposal. The employer shall clean, launder, and dispose of personal protective equipment required by subsections (d) and (e) of this standard, at no cost to the employee.

(E) Repair and Replacement. The employer shall repair or replace personal protective equipment as needed to maintain its effectiveness, at no cost to the employee.

(F) Removal.

1. If a garment(s) is penetrated by blood or OPIM, the garment(s) shall be removed immediately or as soon as feasible.

2. All personal protective equipment shall be removed prior to leaving the work area.

3. When personal protective equipment is removed it shall be placed in an appropriately designated area or container for storage, washing, decontamination or disposal.

(G) Gloves. Gloves shall be worn when it can be reasonably anticipated that the employee may have hand contact with blood, OPIM, mucous membranes, and non-intact skin; when performing vascular access procedures except as specified in subsection (d)(4)(G)4.; and when handling or touching contaminated items or surfaces. These requirements are in addition to the provisions of Section 3384.

1. Disposable (single use) gloves such as surgical or examination gloves, shall be replaced as soon as practical when contaminated or as soon as feasible if they are torn, punctured, or when their ability to function as a barrier is compromised.

2. Disposable (single use) gloves shall not be washed or decontaminated for re-use.

3. Utility gloves may be decontaminated for re-use if the integrity of the glove is not compromised. However, they must be discarded if they are cracked, peeling, torn, punctured, or exhibit other signs of deterioration or when their ability to function as a barrier is compromised.

4. If an employer in a volunteer blood donation center judges that routine gloving for all phlebotomies is not necessary then the employer shall:

a. Periodically reevaluate this policy;

b. Make gloves available to all employees who wish to use them for phlebotomy;

c. Not discourage the use of gloves for phlebotomy; and

d. Require that gloves be used for phlebotomy in the following circumstances:

i. When the employee has cuts, scratches, or other breaks in his or her skin;

ii. When the employee judges that hand contamination with blood may occur, for example, when performing phlebotomy on an uncooperative source individual; and

iii. When the employee is receiving training in phlebotomy.

(H) Masks, Eye Protection, Face Shields, and Respirators.

1. Masks in combination with eye protection devices, such as goggles or glasses with solid side shields, or chin-length face shields, shall be worn whenever splashes, spray, spatter, or droplets of blood or OPIM may be generated and eye, nose, or mouth contamination can be reasonably anticipated. These requirements are in addition to the provisions of Section 3382.

2. Where respiratory protection is used, the provisions of Sections 5144 and 5147 are required as applicable.

NOTE: Surgical masks are not respirators.

(I) Gowns, Aprons, and Other Protective Body Clothing.

1. Appropriate protective clothing such as, but not limited to, gowns, aprons, lab coats, clinic jackets, or similar outer garments shall be worn in occupational exposure situations. The type and characteristics will depend upon the task and degree of exposure anticipated. These requirements are in addition to the provisions of Section 3383.

2. Surgical caps or hoods and/or shoe covers or boots shall be worn in instances when gross contamination can reasonably be anticipated (e.g., autopsies, orthopaedic surgery). These requirements are in addition to the provisions of Section 3383.

(e) HIV, HBV and HCV Research Laboratories and Production Facilities.

(1) General.

This subsection applies in addition to the other requirements of this section to research laboratories and production facilities engaged in the culture, production, concentration, experimentation, and manipulation of HIV, HBV and HCV.

EXCEPTION: This subsection does not apply to clinical or diagnostic laboratories engaged solely in the analysis of blood, tissues, or organs.

(2) Research laboratories and production facilities shall meet the following criteria:

(A) Standard Microbiological Practices. All regulated waste shall either be incinerated or decontaminated by a method such as autoclaving known to effectively destroy bloodborne pathogens. Such methods are further specified in Health and Safety Code Section 118215.

(B) Special Practices.

1. Laboratory doors shall be kept closed when work involving HIV, HBV or HCV is in progress.

2. Contaminated materials that are to be decontaminated at a site away from the work area shall be placed in a durable, leakproof, labeled or color-coded container that is closed before being removed from the work area.

3. Access to the work area shall be limited to authorized persons. Written policies and procedures shall be established whereby only persons who have been advised of the potential biohazard, who meet any specific entry requirements, and who comply with all entry and exit procedures shall be allowed to enter the work areas and animal rooms.

4. When OPIM or infected animals are present in the work area or containment module, a hazard warning sign incorporating the universal biohazard symbol shall be posted on all access doors. The hazard warning sign shall comply with subsection (g)(1)(B) of this standard.

5. All activities involving OPIM shall be conducted in biological safety cabinets or other physical-containment devices within the containment module. No work with these OPIM shall be conducted on the open bench.

6. Laboratory coats, gowns, smocks, uniforms, or other appropriate protective clothing shall be used in the work area and animal rooms. Protective clothing shall not be worn outside of the work area and shall be decontaminated before being laundered.

7. Special care shall be taken to avoid skin contact with OPIM. Gloves shall be worn when handling infected animals and when making hand contact with OPIM is unavoidable.

8. Before disposal, all waste from work areas and from animal rooms shall either be incinerated or decontaminated by a method such as autoclaving known to effectively destroy bloodborne pathogens.

9. Vacuum lines shall be protected with liquid disinfectant traps and HEPA filters or filters of equivalent or superior efficiency and which are checked routinely and maintained or replaced as necessary.

10. Hypodermic needles and syringes shall be used only for parenteral injection and aspiration of fluids from laboratory animals and diaphragm bottles. Only needle-locking syringes or disposable syringe-needle units (i.e., the needle is integral to the syringe) shall be used for the injection or aspiration of OPIM. Extreme caution shall be used when handling needles and syringes. A needle shall not be bent, sheared, replaced in the sheath or guard, or removed from the syringe following use. The needle and syringe shall be promptly placed in a puncture-resistant container and autoclaved or decontaminated before reuse or disposal.

11. All spills shall be immediately contained and cleaned up by appropriate professional staff or others properly trained and equipped to work with potentially concentrated infectious materials.

12. A spill or accident that results in an exposure incident shall be immediately reported to the laboratory director or other responsible person.

13. Written biosafety procedures shall be prepared and adopted into the Exposure Control Plan of subsection (c)(1). Personnel shall be advised of potential hazards, shall be required to read instructions on practices and procedures, and shall be required to follow them.

(C) Containment Equipment.

1. Certified biological safety cabinets (Class I, II, or III) or other appropriate combinations of personal protection or physical containment devices, such as special protective clothing, respirators, centrifuge safety cups, sealed centrifuge rotors, and containment caging for animals, shall be used for all activities with OPIM that pose a threat of exposure to droplets, splashes, spills, or aerosols.

2. Biological safety cabinets shall be certified by the employer that they meet manufacturers' specifications when installed, whenever they are moved and at least annually.

(3) HIV, HBV and HCV research laboratories shall meet the following criteria:

(A) Each laboratory shall contain a facility for hand washing and an eye wash facility which is readily available within the work area.

(B) An autoclave for decontamination of regulated waste shall be available.

NOTE: Treatment of medical waste should meet the requirements of Health and Safety Code Section 118215.

(4) HIV, HBV and HCV production facilities shall meet the following criteria:

(A) The work areas shall be separated from areas that are open to unrestricted traffic flow within the building. Passage through two sets of doors shall be the basic requirement for entry into the work area from access corridors or other contiguous areas. Physical separation of the high-containment work area from access corridors or other areas or activities may also be provided by a double-doored clothes-change room (showers may be included), airlock, or other access facility that requires passing through two sets of doors before entering the work area.

(B) The surfaces of doors, walls, floors and ceilings in the work area shall be water resistant so that they can be easily cleaned. Penetrations in these surfaces shall be sealed or capable of being sealed to facilitate decontamination.

(C) Each work area shall contain a sink for washing hands and a readily available eye wash facility. The sink shall be foot, elbow, or automatically operated and shall be located near the exit door of the work area.

(D) Access doors to the work area or containment module shall be self-closing.

(E) An autoclave for decontamination of regulated waste shall be available within or as near as possible to the work area.

NOTE: Treatment of medical waste should meet the requirements of Health and Safety Code Section 118215.

(F) A ducted exhaust-air ventilation system shall be provided. This system shall create directional airflow that draws air into the work area through the entry area. The exhaust air shall not be recirculated to any other area of the building, shall be discharged to the outside, and shall be dispersed away from occupied areas and air intakes. The proper direction of the airflow shall be verified (i.e., into the work area). The ventilation system shall conform to the requirements of Article 107.

(5) Training Requirements.

Training requirements for employees in HIV, HBV and HCV research laboratories and HIV, HBV and HCV production facilities are specified in subsection (g)(2) and they shall receive in addition the following initial training:

(A) The employer shall assure that employees demonstrate proficiency in standard microbiological practices and techniques and in the practices and operations specific to the facility before being allowed to work with HIV, HBV or HCV.

(B) The employer shall assure that employees have prior experience in the handling of human pathogens or tissue cultures before working with HIV, HBV or HCV.

(C) The employer shall provide a training program to employees who have no prior experience in handling human pathogens. Initial work activities shall not include the handling of infectious agents. A progression of work activities shall be assigned as techniques are learned and proficiency is developed. The employer shall assure that employees participate in work activities involving infectious agents only after proficiency has been demonstrated.

(f) Hepatitis B Vaccination and Bloodborne Pathogen Post-exposure Evaluation and Follow-up.

(1) General.

(A) The employer shall make available the hepatitis B vaccine and vaccination series to all employees who have occupational exposure, and post-exposure evaluation and follow-up for bloodborne pathogens exposure to all employees who have had an exposure incident. When an employer is also acting as the evaluating health care professional, the employer shall advise an employee following an exposure incident that the employee may refuse to consent to post-exposure evaluation and follow-up from the employer-healthcare professional. When consent is refused, the employer shall make immediately available to exposed employees a confidential medical evaluation and follow-up from a healthcare professional other than the exposed employee's employer.

EXCEPTION: Designated first aid providers who have occupational exposure are not required to be offered pre-exposure hepatitis B vaccine if the following conditions exist:

1. The primary job assignment of such designated first aid providers is not the rendering of first aid.

a. Any first aid rendered by such persons is rendered only as a collateral duty responding solely to injuries resulting from workplace incidents, generally at the location where the incident occurred.

b. This exception does not apply to designated first aid providers who render assistance on a regular basis, for example, at a first aid station, clinic, dispensary, or other location where injured employees routinely go for such assistance, and emergency or public safety personnel who are expected to render first aid in the course of their work.

2. The employer's Exposure Control Plan, subsection (c)(1), shall specifically address the provision of hepatitis B vaccine to all unvaccinated first aid providers who have rendered assistance in any situation involving the presence of blood or OPIM (regardless of whether an actual exposure incident, as defined by subsection (b), occurred) and the provision of appropriate post-exposure evaluation, prophylaxis and follow-ups for those employees who experience an exposure incident as defined in subsection (b), including:

a. Provisions for a reporting procedure that ensures that all first aid incidents involving the presence of blood or OPIM shall be reported to the employer before the end of work shift during which the first aid incident occurred.

i. The report must include the names of all first aid providers who rendered assistance, regardless of whether personal protective equipment was used and must describe the first aid incident, including time and date.

A. The description must include a determination of whether or not, in addition to the presence of blood or OPIM, an exposure incident, as defined in subsection (b), occurred.

B. This determination is necessary in order to ensure that the proper post-exposure evaluation, prophylaxis and follow-up procedures required by subsection (f)(3) are made available immediately if there has been an exposure incident, as defined in subsection (b).

ii. The report shall be recorded on a list of such first aid incidents. It shall be readily available to all employees and shall be provided to the Chief upon request.

b. Provision for the bloodborne pathogens training program, required by subsection (g)(2), for designated first aiders to include the specifics of the reporting requirements of subsection (f)(3) and of this exception.

c. Provision for the full hepatitis B vaccination series to be made available as soon as possible, but in no event later than 24 hours, to all unvaccinated first aid providers who have rendered assistance in any situation involving the presence of blood or OPIM regardless of whether or not a specific exposure incident, as defined by subsection (b), has occurred.

3. The employer must implement a procedure to ensure that all of the provisions of subsection 2. of this exception are complied with if pre-exposure hepatitis B vaccine is not to be offered to employees meeting the conditions of subsection 1. of this exception.

(B) The employer shall ensure that all medical evaluations and procedures, including the hepatitis B vaccine and vaccination series and post-exposure evaluation and follow-up, including prophylaxis, are:

1. Made available at no cost to the employee;

2. Made available to the employee at a reasonable time and place;

3. Performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician or by or under the supervision of another licensed healthcare professional; and

4. Provided according to recommendations of the U.S. Public Health Service current at the time these evaluations and procedures take place, except as specified by this subsection (f).

(C) The employer shall ensure that all laboratory tests are conducted by an accredited laboratory at no cost to the employee.

(2) Hepatitis B Vaccination.

(A) Hepatitis B vaccination shall be made available after the employee has received the training required in subsection (g)(2)(G)9. and within 10 working days of initial assignment to all employees who have occupational exposure unless the employee has previously received the complete hepatitis B vaccination series, antibody testing has revealed that the employee is immune, or the vaccine is contraindicated for medical reasons.

(B) The employer shall not make participation in a prescreening program a prerequisite for receiving hepatitis B vaccination.

(C) If the employee initially declines hepatitis B vaccination but at a later date while still covered under the standard decides to accept the vaccination, the employer shall make available hepatitis B vaccination at that time.

(D) The employer shall assure that employees who decline to accept hepatitis B vaccination offered by the employer sign the statement in Appendix A.

(E) If a routine booster dose(s) of hepatitis B vaccine is recommended by the U.S. Public Health Service at a future date, such booster dose(s) shall be made available in accordance with section (f)(1)(B).

(3) Post-exposure Evaluation and Follow-up.

Following a report of an exposure incident, the employer shall make immediately available to the exposed employee a confidential medical evaluation and follow-up, including at least the following elements:

(A) The employer shall document the route(s) of exposure, and the circumstances under which the exposure incident occurred;

(B) The employer shall identify and document the source individual, unless the employer can establish that identification is infeasible or prohibited by state or local law;

1. The source individual's blood shall be tested as soon as feasible and after consent is obtained in order to determine HBV, HCV and HIV infectivity. If consent is not obtained, the employer shall establish that legally required consent cannot be obtained. When the source individual's consent is not required by law, the source individual's blood, if available, shall be tested and the results documented.

2. When the source individual is already known to be infected with HBV, HCV or HIV, testing for the source individual's known HBV, HCV or HIV status need not be repeated.

3. Results of the source individual's testing shall be made available to the exposed employee, and the employee shall be informed of applicable laws and regulations concerning disclosure of the identity and infectious status of the source individual.

(C) The employer shall provide for collection and testing of the employee's blood for HBV, HCV and HIV serological status;

1. The exposed employee's blood shall be collected as soon as feasible and tested after consent is obtained.

2. If the employee consents to baseline blood collection, but does not give consent at that time for HIV serologic testing, the sample shall be preserved for at least 90 days. If, within 90 days of the exposure incident, the employee elects to have the baseline sample tested, such testing shall be done as soon as feasible.

3. Additional collection and testing shall be made available as recommended by the U.S. Public Health Service.

(D) The employer shall provide for post-exposure prophylaxis, when medically indicated, as recommended by the U.S. Public Health Service;

(E) The employer shall provide for counseling and evaluation of reported illnesses.

(4) Information Provided to the Healthcare Professional.

(A) The employer shall ensure that the healthcare professional responsible for the employee's hepatitis B vaccination is provided a copy of this regulation.

(B) The employer shall ensure that the healthcare professional evaluating an employee after an exposure incident is provided the following information:

1. A copy of this regulation;

2. A description of the exposed employee's duties as they relate to the exposure incident;

3. Documentation of the route(s) of exposure and circumstances under which exposure occurred, as required by subsection (f)(3)(A);

4. Results of the source individual's blood testing, if available; and

5. All medical records relevant to the appropriate treatment of the employee including vaccination status which are the employer's responsibility to maintain, as required by subsection (h)(1)(B)2.

(5) Healthcare Professional's Written Opinion.

The employer shall obtain and provide the employee with a copy of the evaluating healthcare professional's written opinion within 15 days of the completion of the evaluation.

(A) The healthcare professional's written opinion for hepatitis B vaccination shall be limited to whether hepatitis B vaccination is indicated for an employee, and if the employee has received such vaccination.

(B) The healthcare professional's written opinion for post-exposure evaluation and follow-up shall be limited to the following information:

1. That the employee has been informed of the results of the evaluation; and

2. That the employee has been told about any medical conditions resulting from exposure to blood or OPIM which require further evaluation or treatment.

(C) All other findings or diagnoses shall remain confidential and shall not be included in the written report.

(6) Medical Recordkeeping.

Medical records required by this standard shall be maintained in accordance with subsection (h)(1) of this section.

(g) Communication of Hazards to Employees.

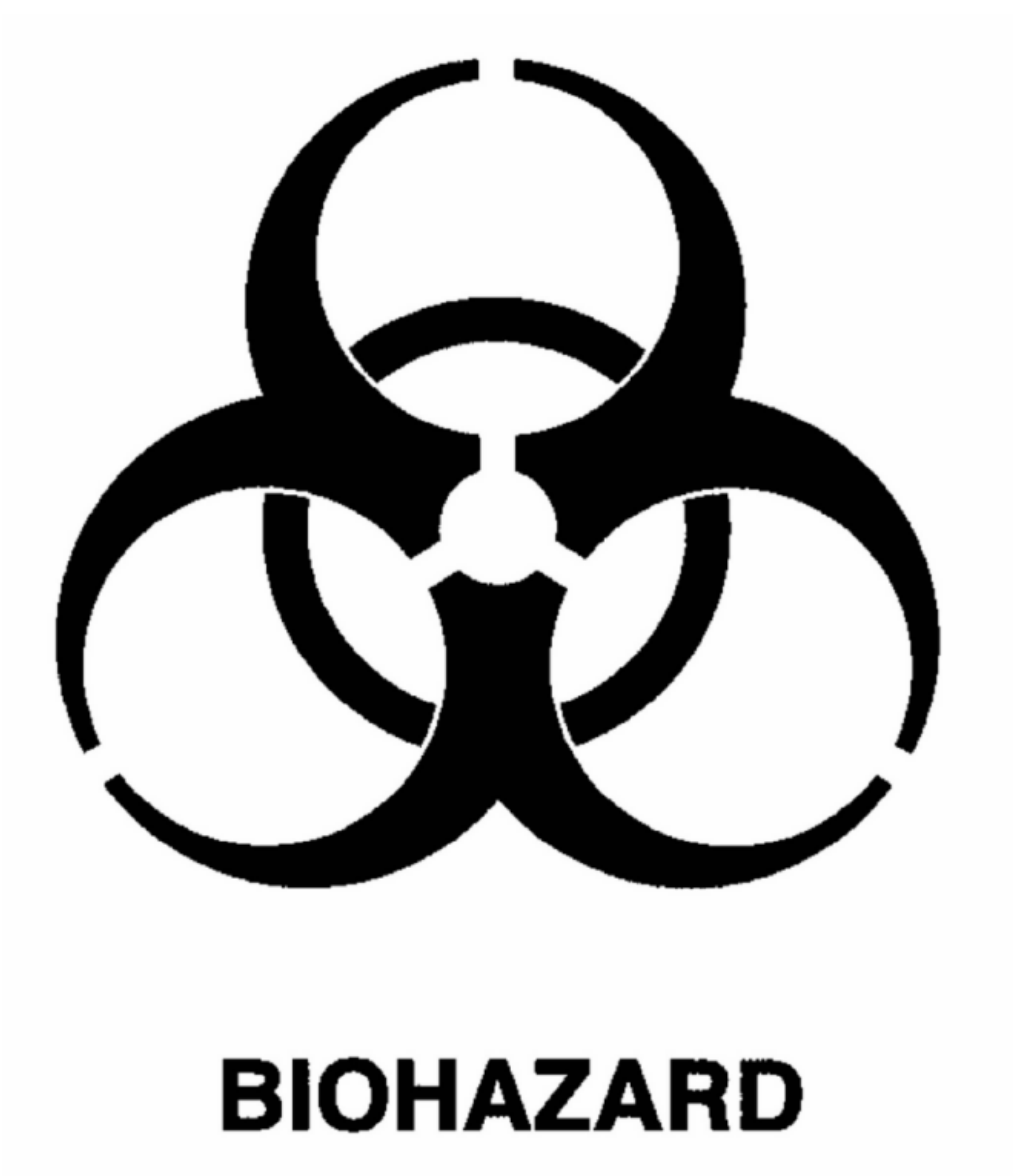
(1) Labels and Signs.

(A) Labels.

1. Warning labels shall be affixed to containers of regulated waste, refrigerators and freezers containing blood or OPIM; and other containers used to store, transport or ship blood or OPIM, except as provided in subsection (g)(1)(A)5., 6. and 7.

NOTE: Other labeling provisions, such as Health and Safety Code Sections 118275 through 118320 may be applicable.

2. Labels required by this section shall include either the following legend as required by Section 3341:



Or in the case of regulated waste the legend:

BIOHAZARDOUS WASTE or SHARPS WASTE

as described in Health and Safety Code Sections 118275 through 118320.

3. These labels shall be fluorescent orange or orange-red or predominantly so, with lettering and symbols in a contrasting color.

4. Labels required by subsection (g)(1)(A) shall either be an integral part of the container or shall be affixed as close as feasible to the container by string, wire, adhesive, or other method that prevents their loss or unintentional removal.

5. Red bags or red containers may be substituted for labels except for sharp containers or regulated waste red bags. Bags used to contain regulated waste shall be color-coded red and shall be labeled in accordance with subsection (g)(1)(A)2. Labels on red bags or red containers do not need to be color-coded in accordance with subsection (g)(1)(A)3.

6. Containers of blood, blood components, or blood products that are labeled as to their contents and have been released for transfusion or other clinical use are exempted from the labeling requirements of subsection (g).

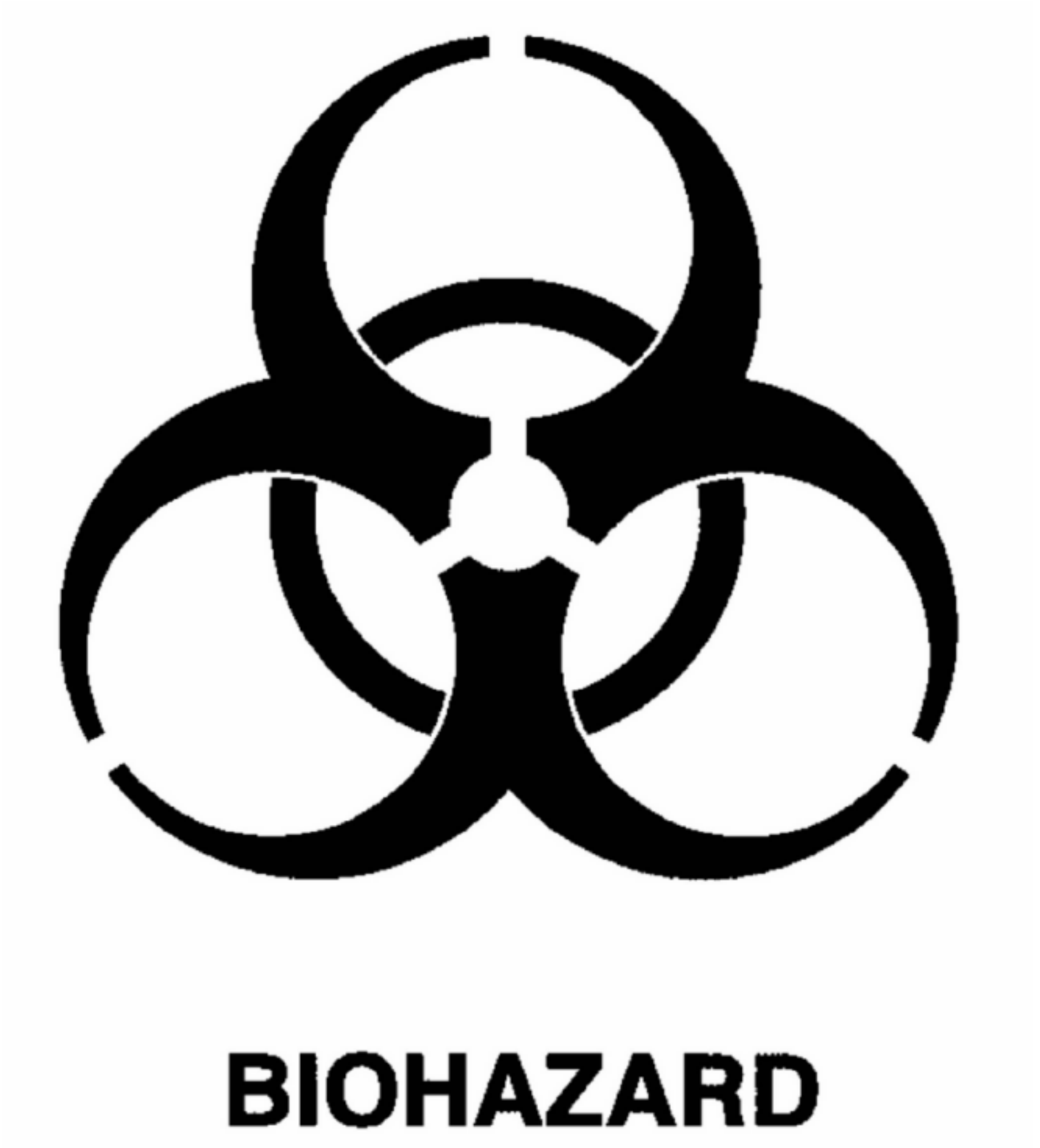
7. Individual containers of blood or OPIM that are placed in a labeled container during storage, transport, shipment or disposal are exempted from the labeling requirement.

8. Labels required for contaminated equipment shall be in accordance with this subsection and shall also state which portions of the equipment remain contaminated.

9. Regulated waste that has been decontaminated need not be labeled or color-coded.

(B) Signs.

1. The employer shall post signs at the entrance to work areas specified in subsection (e), HIV, HBV and HCV Research Laboratory and Production Facilities, which shall bear the following legend:



(Name of the Infectious Agent)

(Special requirements for entering the area)

(Name, telephone number of the laboratory director or other responsible person.)

2. These signs shall be fluorescent orange-red or predominantly so, with lettering and symbols in a contrasting color, and meet the requirements of Section 3340.

(2) Information and Training.

(A) Employers shall ensure that all employees with occupational exposure participate in a training program which must be provided at no cost to the employee and during working hours.

(B) Training shall be provided as follows:

1. At the time of initial assignment to tasks where occupational exposure may take place;

2. At least annually thereafter.

(C) For employees who have received training on bloodborne pathogens in the year preceding the effective date of the standard, only training with respect to the provisions of the standard which were not included need be provided.

(D) Annual training for all employees shall be provided within one year of their previous training.

(E) Employers shall provide additional training when changes, such as introduction of new engineering, administrative or work practice controls, modification of tasks or procedures or institution of new tasks or procedures, affect the employee's occupational exposure. The additional training may be limited to addressing the new exposures created.

(F) Material appropriate in content and vocabulary to educational level, literacy, and language of employees shall be used.

(G) The training program shall contain at a minimum the following elements:

1. Copy and Explanation of Standard. An accessible copy of the regulatory text of this standard and an explanation of its contents;

2. Epidemiology and Symptoms. A general explanation of the epidemiology and symptoms of bloodborne diseases;

3. Modes of Transmission. An explanation of the modes of transmission of bloodborne pathogens;

4. Employer's Exposure Control Plan. An explanation of the employer's exposure control plan and the means by which the employee can obtain a copy of the written plan;

5. Risk Identification. An explanation of the appropriate methods for recognizing tasks and other activities that may involve exposure to blood and OPIM;

6. Methods of Compliance. An explanation of the use and limitations of methods that will prevent or reduce exposure including appropriate engineering controls, administrative or work practice controls and personal protective equipment;

7. Decontamination and Disposal. Information on the types, proper use, location, removal, handling, decontamination and disposal of personal protective equipment;

8. Personal Protective Equipment. An explanation of the basis for selection of personal protective equipment;

9. Hepatitis B Vaccination. Information on the hepatitis B vaccine, including information on its efficacy, safety, method of administration, the benefits of being vaccinated, and that the vaccine and vaccination will be offered free of charge;

10. Emergency. Information on the appropriate actions to take and persons to contact in an emergency involving blood or OPIM;

11. Exposure Incident. An explanation of the procedure to follow if an exposure incident occurs, including the method of reporting the incident, the medical follow-up that will be made available and the procedure for recording the incident on the Sharps Injury Log;

12. Post-Exposure Evaluation and Follow-Up. Information on the post-exposure evaluation and follow-up that the employer is required to provide for the employee following an exposure incident;

13. Signs and Labels. An explanation of the signs and labels and/or color coding required by subsection (g)(1); and

14. Interactive Questions and Answers. An opportunity for interactive questions and answers with the person conducting the training session.

NOTE: Additional training is required for employees of HIV, HBV, and HCV Research Laboratories and Production Facilities, as described in subsection (e)(5).

(H) The person conducting the training shall be knowledgeable in the subject matter covered by the elements contained in the training program as it relates to the workplace that the training will address.

(h) Recordkeeping.

(1) Medical Records.

(A) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record for each employee with occupational exposure, in accordance with Section 3204.

(B) This record shall include:

1. The name and social security number of the employee;

2. A copy of the employee's hepatitis B vaccination status including the dates of all the hepatitis B vaccinations and any medical records relative to the employee's ability to receive vaccination as required by subsection (f)(2);

3. A copy of all results of examinations, medical testing, and follow-up procedures as required by subsection (f)(3);

4. The employer's copy of the healthcare professional's written opinion as required by subsection (f)(5); and

5. A copy of the information provided to the healthcare professional as required by subsections (f)(4)(B)2., 3. and 4.

(C) Confidentiality. The employer shall ensure that employee medical records required by subsection (h)(1) are:

1. Kept confidential; and

2. Not disclosed or reported without the employee's express written consent to any person within or outside the workplace except as required by this section or as may be required by law.

(D) The employer shall maintain the records required by subsection (h)(1) for at least the duration of employment plus 30 years in accordance with Section 3204.

(2) Training Records.

(A) Training records shall include the following information:

1. The dates of the training sessions;

2. The contents or a summary of the training sessions;

3. The names and qualifications of persons conducting the training; and

4. The names and job titles of all persons attending the training sessions.

(B) Training records shall be maintained for 3 years from the date on which the training occurred.

(3) Sharps Injury Log.

The Sharps Injury Log shall be maintained 5 years from the date the exposure incident occurred.

(4) Availability.

(A) The employer shall ensure that all records required to be maintained by this section shall be made available upon request to the Chief and NIOSH for examination and copying.

(B) Employee training records required by this subsection shall be provided upon request for examination and copying to employees, to employee representatives, to the Chief, and to NIOSH.

(C) Employee medical records required by this subsection shall be provided upon request for examination and copying to the subject employee, to anyone having written consent of the subject employee, to the Chief, and to NIOSH in accordance with Section 3204.

(D) The Sharps Injury Log required by subsection (c)(2) shall be provided upon request for examination and copying to employees, to employee representatives, to the Chief, to the Department of Health Services, and to NIOSH.

(5) Transfer of Records.

(A) The employer shall comply with the requirements involving transfer of records set forth in Section 3204.

(B) If the employer ceases to do business and there is no successor employer to receive and retain the records for the prescribed period, the employer shall notify NIOSH, at least three months prior to their disposal and transmit them to the NIOSH, if required by the NIOSH to do so, within that three month period.

(i) Appendix.

Appendix A to this section is incorporated as a part of this section and the provision is mandatory.

Appendix A - Hepatitis B Vaccine Declination

(MANDATORY)

The employer shall assure that employees who decline to accept hepatitis B vaccination offered by the employer sign the following statement as required by subsection (f)(2)(D):

> I understand that due to my occupational exposure to blood or OPIM I may be at risk of acquiring hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection. I have been given the opportunity to be vaccinated with hepatitis B vaccine, at no charge to myself. However, I decline hepatitis B vaccination at this time. I understand that by declining this vaccine, I continue to be at risk of acquiring hepatitis B, a serious disease. If in the future I continue to have occupational exposure to blood or OPIM and I want to be vaccinated with hepatitis B vaccine, I can receive the vaccination series at no charge to me.

Note: Authority cited: Sections 142.3 and 144.7, Labor Code. Reference: Sections 142.3 and 144.7, Labor Code; Sections 117600 through 118360, Health and Safety Code.

HISTORY

1. New section filed 12-9-92; operative 1-11-93 (Register 92, No. 50).

2. Editorial correction of printing errors in subsections (c)(1)(A) and (d)(2)(C) (Register 93, No. 32).

3. Amendment of subsections (g)(1)(A)2. and (g)(1)(B)2. filed 2-5-97; operative 3-7-97 (Register 97, No. 6).

4. Amendment filed 1-22-99 as an emergency; effective 1-22-99 (Register 99, No. 4). The emergency regulation filed 1-22-99 shall remain in effect until the nonemergency regulation becomes operative or until August 1, 1999, whichever first occurs pursuant to Labor Code section 144.7(a).

5. Permanent adoption of 1-22-99 amendments, including further amendments, filed 7-30-99 pursuant to Labor Code section 144.7(a); operative 7-30-99 pursuant to Government Code section 11343.4(d) (Register 99, No. 31).

6. Repealer of subsection (c)(1)(D)2., new subsections (c)(1)(D)2.a.-b. and (c)(1)(E), subsection relettering, amendment of subsection (c)(2), new subsections (c)(2)(D)-(E) and amendment of subsections (d)(3)(B)2.Exception, (d)(3)(E)3.b., (d)(3)(H)1.b. and (d)(3)(H)2.a. filed 8-3-2001; operative 8-3-2001. Submitted to OAL for printing only. Exempt from OAL review pursuant to Labor Code section 142.3 (Register 2001, No. 31).

7. Change without regulatory effect providing more legible illustrations for biohazard symbols filed 3-2-2009 pursuant to section 100, title 1, California Code of Regulations (Register 2009, No. 10).

8. Editorial correction of subsection (g)(2)(E) (Register 2015, No. 37).

Go Back to Article 109 Table of Contents

This information is provided free of charge by the Department of Industrial Relations from its web site at www.dir.ca.gov. These regulations are for the convenience of the user and no representation or warranty is made that the information is current or accurate. See full disclaimer at https://www.dir.ca.gov/od_pub/disclaimer.html.

Return to index
New query

---

§5194. Hazard Communication

(a) (Reserved)

(b) Scope and Application.

(1) This section requires manufacturers or importers to classify the hazards of chemicals which they produce or import, and all employers to provide information to their employees about the hazardous chemicals to which they may be exposed, by means of a hazard communication program, labels and other forms of warning, safety data sheets, and information and training. In addition, this section requires distributors to transmit the required information to employers.

(2) This section applies to any hazardous chemical which is known to be present in the work place in such a manner that employees may be exposed under normal conditions of use or in a reasonably foreseeable emergency resulting from work place operations.

(3) This section applies to laboratories that primarily provide quality control analyses for manufacturing processes or that produce hazardous chemicals for commercial purposes, and to all other laboratories except those under the direct supervision and regular observation of an individual who has knowledge of the physical hazards, health hazards, and emergency procedures associated with the use of the particular hazardous chemicals involved, and who conveys this knowledge to employees in terms of safe work practices. Such excepted laboratories must also ensure that labels of incoming containers of hazardous chemicals are not removed or defaced pursuant to section 5194(f)(9), and must maintain any safety data sheets that are received with incoming shipments of hazardous chemicals and ensure that they are readily available to laboratory employees pursuant to section 5194(g).

(4) This section does not require labeling of the following chemicals:

(A) Any pesticide as such term is defined in the Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act (7 U.S.C. 136 et seq.), when subject to the labeling requirements of that Act and labeling regulations issued under that Act by the Environmental Protection Agency;

(B) Any food, food additive, color additive, drug, cosmetic, or medical or veterinary device, including materials intended for use as ingredients in such products (e.g., flavors and fragrances), as such terms are defined in the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 301 et seq.) and regulations issued under that Act, when they are subject to the labeling requirements of that Act and labeling regulations issued under that Act by the Food and Drug Administration;

(C) Any distilled spirits (beverage alcohols), wine, or malt beverage intended for nonindustrial use, as such terms are defined in the Federal Alcohol Administration Act (27 U.S.C. 201 et seq.) and regulations issued under that Act, when subject to the labeling requirements of that Act and labeling regulations issued under that Act by the Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and Explosives; and;

(D) Any consumer product or hazardous substance as those terms are defined in the Consumer Product Safety Act (15 U.S.C. 2051 et seq.) and Federal Hazardous Substances Act (15 U.S.C. 1261 et seq.) respectively, when subject to a consumer product safety standard or labeling requirement of those Acts, or regulations issued under those Acts by the Consumer Product Safety Commission.

(5) This section does not apply to:

(A) Any hazardous waste as such term is defined by the Solid Waste Disposal Act, as amended by the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976, as amended (42U.S.C. 6901 et seq.), when subject to regulations issued under that Act by the Environmental Protection Agency;

(B) Tobacco or tobacco products;

(C) Wood or wood products including lumber which will not be processed, where the manufacturer or importer can establish that the only hazard they pose to employees is the potential for flammability or combustibility (non-excluded hazardous chemicals which are used in conjunction with wood or wood products, or are known to be present as impurities in those materials, and wood which may be subsequently sawed or cut, generating dust, are covered by this section);

(D) Articles (hazardous chemicals used in the manufacture or use of an article are covered by this section unless otherwise excluded);

(E) Foods, drugs, or cosmetics intended for personal consumption by employees while in the workplace;

(F) Retail food sale establishments and all other retail trade establishments, exclusive of processing and repair work areas;

(G) Consumer products packaged for distribution to, and use by, the general public, provided that employee exposure to the product is not significantly greater than the consumer exposure occurring during the principal consumer use of the product;

(H) The use of a chemical in compliance with regulations of the Director of the Department of Pesticide Regulation issued pursuant to section 12981 of the Food and Agricultural Code.

(I) Work operations where employees only handle chemicals in sealed containers which are not opened under normal conditions of use (such as are found in marine cargo handling, warehousing, or transportation); however, this section does apply to these operations as follows:

1. Employers shall ensure that labels on incoming containers of hazardous chemicals are not removed or defaced;

2. Employers shall maintain copies of any safety data sheets that are received with incoming shipments of the sealed containers of hazardous chemicals, shall obtain a safety data sheet for sealed containers of hazardous chemicals received without a safety data sheet if an employee requests the safety data sheet, and shall ensure that the safety data sheets are readily accessible during each work shift to employees when they are in their work area(s); and,

3. Employers shall ensure that employees are provided with information and training in accordance with subsection (h) except for the location and availability of the written hazard communication program under subsection (h)(2)(C), to the extent necessary to protect them in the event of a spill or leak of a hazardous chemical from a sealed container.

(6) Proposition 65 Warnings.

(A) Notwithstanding any other provision of law including the preceding subsections, an employer which is a person in the course of doing business within the meaning of Health and Safety Code Section 25249.11(a) and (b), is subject to the Safe Drinking Water and Toxic Enforcement Act of 1986 (Proposition 65 or the “Act”) (Health and Safety Code § 25249.5 et seq.), and shall comply with the Act in the manner set forth in subsections (B) and (C) below. The following employers are not subject to the Act:

1. an employer employing fewer than ten employees;

2. any city, county, or district or any department or agency thereof or the state or any department or agency thereof or the federal government or any department or agency thereof;

3. any entity in its operation of a public water system as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 4010.1.

(B) Exposures Subject to Proposition 65 and Hazard Communication. Before exposing any employee to any hazardous substance that otherwise falls within the scope of this section and which requires a warning under this Act (see 22 CCR Section 12000, Chemicals Known to the State to Cause Cancer or Reproductive Toxicity) except as provided in subsection (D) below, any employer subject to the Act shall comply with the requirements set forth in subsections (d) through (k). Such compliance shall be deemed compliance with the Act.

(C) Exposures Subject to Proposition 65 Only. Before knowingly and intentionally exposing any employee to any hazardous substance that does not otherwise fall within the scope of the section, but which requires a warning under the Act (see 22 CCR Section 12000, Chemicals Known to the State to Cause Cancer or Reproductive Toxicity) except as provided in subsection (D) below, any employer subject to the Act shall either provide a warning to employees in compliance with California Code of Regulations Title 22 (22 CCR) Section 12601(c) in effect on May 9, 1991 or shall comply with the requirements set forth in subsections (d) through (k).

(D) Exposures Not Subject to Proposition 65. A warning required by subsection (B) and (C) above shall not apply to any of the following:

1. An exposure for which federal law governs warning in a manner that preempts state authority.

2. An exposure that takes place less than twelve months subsequent to the listing of the chemical in 22 CCR Section 12000.

3. An exposure for which the employer responsible can show that the exposure poses no significant risk assuming lifetime exposure at the level in question for the chemicals known to the State to cause cancer, and that the exposure will have no observable effect assuming exposure at one thousand (1,000) times the level in question for chemicals known to the State to cause reproductive toxicity, based on evidence and standards of comparable scientific validity to the evidence and standards which form the scientific basis for the listing of such chemical in 22 CCR Section 12000. In any enforcement action the burden of showing that an exposure meets the criteria of this subsection shall be on the employer.

(E) Additional Enforcement of Proposition 65. In addition to any other applicable enforcement provision, violations or threatened violations of the Act may be enforced in the manner set forth in Health and Safety Code Section 25249.7 for violations and threatened violations of Health and Safety Code Section 25249.6. Compliance with 22 CCR Section 12601(c) in effect on May 9, 1991 shall be deemed a defense to an enforcement action under Health and Safety Code Section 25249.7.

(F) All terms and provisions of subsection (b)(6) shall have the same meaning as the following 22 CCR Sections in effect on May 9, 1991: 12201(a), 12201(b), 12201(c), 12201(d), 12201(f), 12201(k), 12502, 12601, 12701(a), 12701(b), 12701(d), 12703, 12705, 12707, 12709, 12711, 12721, 12801, 12803, 12805, 12821 and 12901. The above listed 22 CCR Sections in effect on May 9, 1991 are printed in Appendix G to this section. Additionally, all terms and provisions of subsection (b)(6) shall have the same meaning as in the Act and in 22 CCR Section 12000.

(c) Definitions.

Article.

A manufactured item: (1) Which is formed to a specific shape or design during manufacture; (2) which has end use function(s) dependent in whole or in part upon it shape or design during end use; and (3) which does not release, or otherwise result in exposure to, a hazardous chemical under normal conditions of use or in a reasonably foreseeable emergency resulting from workplace operations.

CAS number.

The unique identification number assigned by the Chemical Abstracts Service to specific chemical substances.

Chemical.

Any substance, or mixture of substances.

Chemical name.

The scientific designation of a chemical in accordance with the nomenclature system developed by the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) or the Chemical Abstracts Service (CAS) rules of nomenclature, or a name which will clearly identify the chemical for the purpose of conducting a hazard classification.

Chief.

The Chief of the Division of Occupational Safety and Health, P.O. Box 420603, San Francisco, CA 94142, or designee.

Classification.

Identification of relevant data regarding the hazards of a chemical; review of those data to ascertain the hazards associated with the chemical; and decision regarding whether the chemical will be classified as hazardous according to the definition of hazardous chemical in this section. In addition, classification for health and physical hazards includes the determination of the degree of hazard, where appropriate, by comparing the data with the criteria for health and physical hazards.

Combustible liquid.

Any liquid having a flashpoint greater than 199.4 °F (93 °C) (formerly designated Class IIIB Combustible liquids).

Common name.

Any designation or identification such as code name, code number, trade name, brand name or generic name used to identify a chemical other than by its chemical name.

Container.

Any bag, barrel, bottle, box, can, cylinder, drum, reaction vessel, storage tank, tank truck, or the like that contains a hazardous chemical. For purposes of this section, pipes or piping systems are not considered to be containers.

Department.

The Department of Industrial Relations, P.O. Box 420603, San Francisco, CA 94142, or designee.

Designated representative.

Any individual or organization to whom an employee gives written authorization to exercise such employee's rights under this section. A recognized or certified collective bargaining agent shall be treated automatically as a designated representative without regard to written employee authorization.

Director.

The Director of Industrial Relations, P.O. Box 420603, San Francisco, CA 94142, or designee.

Distributor.

A business, other than a manufacturer or importer, which supplies hazardous chemicals to other distributors or to employers.

Division.

The Division of Occupational Safety and Health (Cal/OSHA), California Department of Industrial Relations, or designee.

Emergency.

Any potential occurrence such as, but not limited to, equipment failure, rupture of containers, or failure of control equipment, which may or does result in a release of a hazardous chemical into the workplace.

Employee.

Every person who is required or directed by any employer, to engage in any employment, or to go to work or be at any time in any place of employment.

Employer.

Employer means:

(A) The State and every State agency.

(B) Each county, city, district, and all public and quasi-public corporations and public agencies therein.

(C) Every person including any public service corporation, which has any natural person in service.

(D) The legal representative of any deceased employer.

Exposure or Exposed.

Any situation arising from work operation where an employee may ingest, inhale, absorb through the skin or eyes, or otherwise come into contact with a hazardous chemical.

Hazard category.

The division of criteria within each hazard class, e.g., oral acute toxicity and flammable liquids include four hazard categories. These categories compare hazard severity within a hazard class and should not be taken as a comparison of hazard categories more generally.

Hazard class.

The nature of the physical or health hazards, e.g., flammable solid, carcinogen, oral acute toxicity.

Hazard not otherwise classified (HNOC).

An adverse physical or health effect identified through evaluation of scientific evidence during the classification process that does not meet the specified criteria for the physical and health hazard classes addressed in this section. This does not extend coverage to adverse physical and health effects for which there is a hazard class addressed in this section, but the effect either falls below the cut-off value/concentration limit of the hazard class or is under a GHS hazard category that has not been adopted by OSHA (e.g., acute toxicity Category 5).

Hazard statement.

A statement assigned to a hazard class and category that describes the nature of the hazard(s) of a chemical, including, where appropriate, the degree of hazard.

Hazardous chemical.

Any chemical which is classified as a physical hazard or a health hazard, a simple asphyxiant, combustible dust, pyrophoric gas, a hazard not otherwise classified, or is included in the List of Hazardous Substances prepared by the Director pursuant to Labor Code section 6382.

Health hazard.

A chemical which is classified as posing one of the following hazardous effects: acute toxicity (any route of exposure); skin corrosion or irritation; serious eye damage or eye irritation; respiratory or skin sensitization; germ cell mutagenicity; carcinogenicity; reproductive toxicity; specific target organ toxicity (single or repeated exposure); or aspiration hazard. The criteria for determining whether a chemical is classified as a health hazard are detailed in subsection (d) and Appendix A to this section - Health Hazard Criteria.

Immediate use.

The hazardous chemical will be under the control of and used only by the person who transfers it from a labeled container and only within the work shift in which it is transferred.

Importer.

The first business with employees within the Customs Territory of the United States which receives hazardous chemicals produced in other countries for the purpose of supplying them to distributors or purchasers within the United States.

Label.

An appropriate group of written, printed or graphic information elements concerning a hazardous chemical that is affixed to, printed on, or attached to the immediate container of a hazardous chemical, or to the outside packaging.

Label elements.

The specified pictogram, hazard statement, signal word and precautionary statement for each hazard class and category.

Manufacturer.

A person who produces, synthesizes, extracts, or otherwise makes a hazardous chemical.

Mixture.

A combination or a solution composed of two or more substances in which they do not react.

NIOSH. The National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

Physical hazard.

A chemical that is classified as posing one of the following hazardous effects: explosive; flammable (gases, aerosols, liquids, or solids); oxidizer (liquid, solid or gas); self-reactive; pyrophoric (liquid or solid); self-heating; organic peroxide; corrosive to metal; gas under pressure; combustible liquid; water-reactive; or in contact with water emits flammable gas. See Appendix B to section 5194 - Physical Hazard Criteria.

Pictogram.

A composition that may include a symbol plus other graphic elements, such as a border, background pattern, or color, that is intended to convey specific information about the hazards of a chemical. Eight pictograms are designated under this standard for application to a hazard category.

Precautionary statement.

A phrase that describes recommended measures that should be taken to minimize or prevent adverse effects resulting from exposure to a hazardous chemical, or improper storage or handling.

Produce.

To manufacture, process, formulate, repackage, or relabel.

Product identifier.

The name or number used for a hazardous chemical on a label or in the SDS. It provides a unique means by which the user can identify the chemical. The product identifier used shall permit cross-references to be made among the list of hazardous chemicals required in the written hazard communication program, the label and the SDS.

Pyrophoric gas.

A chemical in a gaseous state that will ignite spontaneously in air at a temperature of 130 degrees F (54.4 degrees C) or below.

Responsible party.

Someone who can provide additional information on the hazardous chemical and appropriate emergency procedures, if necessary.

Safety data sheet (SDS).

Written or printed material concerning a hazardous chemical that is prepared in accordance with section 5194(g).

Signal word.

A word used to indicate the relative level of severity of hazard and alert the reader to a potential hazard on the label. The signal words used in this section are “danger” and “warning.” “Danger” is used for the more severe hazards, while “warning” is used for the less severe.

Simple asphyxiant.

A substance or mixture that displaces oxygen in the ambient atmosphere, and can thus cause oxygen deprivation in those who are exposed, leading to unconsciousness and death.

Specific chemical identity.

The chemical name, Chemical Abstracts Service (CAS) Registry Number, or any other information that reveals the precise chemical designation of the substance.

Substance.

Chemical elements and their compounds in the natural state or obtained by any production process, including any additive necessary to preserve the stability of the product and any impurities deriving from the process used, but excluding any solvent which may be separated without affecting the stability of the substance or changing its composition.

Trade secret.

Any confidential formula, pattern, process, device, information, or compilation of information which gives its user an opportunity to obtain a business advantage over competitors who do not know or use it. A trade secret shall not include chemical identity information which is readily discoverable through qualitative analysis. Appendix E to section 5194-Definition of Trade Secret sets out the criteria to be used in evaluating trade secrets.

Use.

To package, handle, react, or transfer.

Work area.

A room or defined space in a workplace where hazardous chemicals are produced or used, and where employees are present.

Workplace.

Any place, and the premises appurtenant thereto, where employment is carried on, except a place the health and safety jurisdiction over which is vested by law in, and actively exercised by, any state or federal agency other than the Division.

(d) Hazard Classification.

(1) Manufacturers and importers shall evaluate chemicals produced in their workplaces or imported by them to determine if they are hazardous and classify the chemicals in accordance with this section. For each chemical, the manufacturer or importer shall determine the hazard classes, and where appropriate, the category of each class that apply to the chemical being classified. Employers are not required to classify chemicals unless they choose not to rely on the classification performed by the manufacturer or importer for the chemical to satisfy this requirement.

(2) Manufacturers, importers, or employers classifying chemicals shall identify and consider the full range of available scientific literature and other evidence concerning the potential hazards. This section does not require manufacturers, importers, or employers to conduct toxicological testing or epidemiological studies of the chemical(s) to determine how to classify the hazards. Appendix A to section 5194 shall be consulted for classification of health hazards and Appendix B to section 5194 shall be consulted for the classification of physical hazards. In addition, the manufacturer, importer, or employer classifying chemicals shall ensure that the identity and health effect of every chemical that they determine does not meet criteria in Appendix A for classification is noted on the safety data sheet if:

(A) There is statistically significant evidence of a hazardous effect; and,

(B) The evidence is based on at least one positive study conducted in accordance with established scientific principles.

(3) Manufacturers, importers, or employers classifying chemicals shall treat any chemical listed on the following sources as a hazardous chemical and shall be required to classify the listed chemical using the criteria as described in Appendix A.

(A) The list of hazardous substances prepared by the Director pursuant to Labor Code section 6382 and as promulgated in title 8, California Code of Regulations, section 339.

(B) 29 CFR part 1910, subpart Z, Toxic and Hazardous Substances, Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).

(C) Threshold Limit Values for Chemical Substances in the Work Environment, American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH) (latest edition).

(D) Chemicals specifically identified and regulated under Title 8, Article 107, Dusts, Fumes, Mists, Vapors and Gases, and Article 109, Hazardous Substances and Processes.

The manufacturer, importer, or employer is still responsible for classifying and categorizing the hazards associated with the chemicals in these source lists in accordance with the requirements of this standard and its appendices.

EXCEPTION to subsection (d)(3): A manufacturer, importer, or employer classifying the hazards associated with the chemicals listed above who determines, based on thorough review of all available evidence, that the chemical does not meet the criteria in Appendix A for classification, is not required to classify that chemical provided that the classifier does all of the following:

1. Documents the basis for that determination including the studies or evidence relied upon, and maintains and makes that documentation available to employees, employers and the Division upon request, in accordance with this Section and Section 3204.

2. Discloses the identity of the chemical and the listing upon which the chemical appears on the SDS.

(4) Manufacturers, importers, and employers classifying chemicals shall treat any of the following sources as establishing that a chemical listed has met the total weight of evidence criteria as described in Appendix A for classification as a known or presumed human carcinogen, or a suspected human carcinogen for purposes of this section:

(A) National Toxicology Program (NTP), *Annual Report on Carcinogens*, (latest edition).

(B) International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) *Monographs* (latest editions) .

(C) Substances subject to regulation under the Occupational Carcinogen Control Act or which are regulated in Title 8, Article 110, Regulated Carcinogens.

(D) Substances that meet the definition of “select carcinogen” in Title 8, Section 5191.

EXCEPTION to subsection (d)(4): A manufacturer, importer, or employer classifying the hazards associated with the chemicals listed above who determines, based on thorough review of all available evidence, that the chemical does not cause cancer, need not classify that chemical as a carcinogen, provided that the classifier does all of the following:

1. Documents the basis for that determination including the studies or evidence relied upon, and maintains and makes that documentation available to employees, employers and the Division upon request, in accordance with this Section and Section 3204.

2. Discloses the identity of the chemical, and the listing upon which the chemical appears on the SDS. In addition, a notation shall appear on the SDS, in accordance with Appendix D, for all substances listed by NTP or IARC as carcinogens.

(5) Mixtures.

(A) Manufacturers, importers, or employers evaluating chemicals shall follow the procedures described in Appendices A and B to section 5194 to classify the hazards of the chemicals, including determinations regarding when mixtures of the classified chemicals are covered by this section.

(B) Manufacturers, importers or employers are also required to list any hazardous chemical on the SDS known to be present in a mixture, where the chemical is:

1. either a. One percent or more of the mixture or product or b. Two percent of the mixture or product if the hazardous chemical exists as an impurity in the mixture; and

2. the concentration of the chemical in the mixture is below the cut-off concentration specified in Appendix A.

(C) When classifying mixtures they produce or import, manufacturers and importers of mixtures may rely on the information provided on the current SDS of the individual ingredients except where the manufacturer or importer knows, or in the exercise of reasonable diligence should know, that the SDS misstates or omits information required by this section.

(D) If the manufacturer, importer, or employer classifying a mixture has evidence to indicate that a component present in the mixture presents a health risk below the cut-off/concentration limits in Appendix A, this information shall be included on the SDS in accordance with Appendix D.

(6) Manufacturers, importers, or employers classifying chemicals shall describe in writing the procedures they use to determine the hazards of the chemicals they evaluate. The written procedures are to be made available, upon request, to employees, their designated representatives, the Director, and NIOSH. The written description may be incorporated into the written hazard communication program required under section 5194(e).

(e) Written Hazard Communication Program.

(1) Employers shall develop, implement, and maintain at the workplace a written hazard communication program for their employees which at least describes how the criteria specified in sections 5194(f), (g), and (h) for labels and other forms of warning, safety data sheets, and employee information and training will be met, and which also includes the following:

(A) A list of the hazardous chemicals known to be present using a product identifier that is referenced on the appropriate safety data sheet (the list may be compiled for the workplace as a whole or for individual work areas); and

(B) The methods the employer will use to inform employees of the hazards of non-routine tasks (for example, the cleaning of reactor vessels), and the hazards associated with chemicals contained in unlabeled pipes in their work areas.

(2) In multi-employer workplaces, the written hazard communication program shall include the methods employers will use to inform any employers sharing the same work area of the hazardous chemicals to which their employees may be exposed while performing their work, and any suggestions for appropriate protective measures, including the following:

(A) The methods the employer will use to provide the other employer(s) with access to the safety data sheet, or to make it available at a central location in the workplace, for each hazardous chemical the other employer(s)' employees may be exposed to while working;

(B) The methods the employer will use to inform the other employer(s) of any precautionary measures that need to be taken to protect employees during the workplace's normal operating conditions and in foreseeable emergencies; and,

(C) The methods the employer will use to inform the other employer(s) of the labeling system used in the workplace.

(3) The employer shall make the written hazard communication program available, upon request, to employees, their designated representatives, the Chief, and NIOSH, in accordance with the requirements of section 3204(e).

(f) Labels and Other Forms of Warning.

(1) Labels on shipped containers. The manufacturer, importer, or distributor shall ensure that each container of hazardous chemicals leaving the workplace is labeled, tagged or marked. Hazards not otherwise classified do not have to be addressed on the container. Where the manufacturer or importer is required to label, tag or mark the following information shall be provided:

(A) Product identifier;

(B) Signal word;

(C) Hazard statement(s);

(D) Pictogram(s);

(E) Precautionary statement(s); and,

(F) Name, address, and telephone number of the manufacturer, importer, or other responsible party.

(2) The manufacturer, importer, or distributor shall ensure that the information provided under section 5194 (f)(1)(A) through (E) is in accordance with Appendix C to section 5194, for each hazard class and associated hazard category for the hazardous chemical, prominently displayed, and in English (other languages may also be included if appropriate).

(3) The manufacturer, importer, or distributor shall ensure that the information provided under section 5194 (f)(1)(B) through (D) is located together on the tag, label or mark.

(4) Solid materials.

(A) For solid metal (such as a steel beam or a metal casting) that is not exempted as an article due to its downstream use, or shipments of whole grain, the required label may be transmitted to the customer at the time of the initial shipment, and need not be included with subsequent shipments to the same employer unless the information on the label changes;

(B) The label may be transmitted with the initial shipment itself, or with the safety data sheet that is to be provided prior to or at the time of the first shipment; and,

(C) This exception to requiring labels on every container of hazardous chemicals is only for the solid material itself, and does not apply to hazardous chemicals used in conjunction with, or known to be present with, the material and to which employees handling the items in transit may be exposed (for example, cutting fluids, pesticides in grains or lubricants).

(5) Manufacturers, importers, or distributors shall ensure that each container of hazardous chemicals leaving the workplace is labeled, tagged, or marked in accordance with this section in a manner which does not conflict with the requirements of the Hazardous Materials Transportation Act (18 U.S.C. 1801 et seq.) and regulations issued under that Act by the Department of Transportation.

(6) Workplace labeling. Except as provided in sections 5194(f)(7) and (f)(8) the employer shall ensure that each container of hazardous chemicals in the workplace is labeled, tagged, or marked with either:

(A) The information specified under section 5194 (f)(1)(A) through (E) for labels on shipped containers; or,

(B) Product identifier and words, pictures, symbols, or combination thereof, which provide at least general information regarding the hazards of the chemicals, and which, in conjunction with the other information immediately available to employees under the hazard communication program, will provide employees with the specific information regarding the physical and health hazards of the hazardous chemical.

(7) The employer may use signs, placards, process sheets, batch tickets, operating procedures, or other such written materials in lieu of affixing labels to individual stationary process containers, as long as the alternative method identifies the containers to which it is applicable and conveys the information required by section 5194(f)(6) to be on a label. The written materials shall be readily accessible to the employees in their work area throughout each work shift. In construction, the employer may use such written materials in lieu of affixing labels to individual containers as long as the alternative method identifies and accompanies the containers to which it is applicable and conveys the information required to be on a label.

(8) The employer is not required to label portable containers into which hazardous chemicals are transferred from labeled containers, and which are intended only for the immediate use of the employee who performs the transfer.

(9) The employer shall not remove or intentionally deface existing labels on incoming containers of hazardous chemicals, unless the container is immediately marked with the required information.

(10) The employer shall ensure that workplace labels or other forms of warning are legible, in English, and prominently displayed on the container, or readily available in the work area throughout each work shift. Employers having employees who speak other languages may add the information in their language to the material presented, as long as the information is presented in English as well.

(11) Manufacturers, importers, distributors, or employers who become newly aware of any significant information regarding the hazards of a chemical shall revise the labels for the chemical within six months of becoming aware of the new information. Labels on containers of hazardous chemicals shipped after that time shall contain the new information. If the chemical is not currently produced or imported, the manufacturer, importer, distributor, or employer shall add the information to the label before the chemical is shipped or introduced into the workplace again.

(g) Safety Data Sheets.

(1) Manufacturers and importers shall obtain or develop a safety data sheet for each hazardous chemical they produce or import. Employers shall have a safety data sheet for each hazardous chemical which they use.

Note to (g)(1): Employers should also refer to section 3204 concerning information to be retained after a particular chemical is no longer in use.

(2) The manufacturer or importer preparing the safety data sheet shall ensure that it is in English (although the employer may maintain copies in other languages as well) and includes at least the following section numbers and headings, and associated information under each heading, in the order listed (See Appendix D to section 5194—Safety Data Sheets, for the specific content of each section of the safety data sheet):

(A) Section 1, Identification;

(B) Section 2, Hazard(s) identification;

(C) Section 3, Composition/information on ingredients;

(D) Section 4, First-aid measures;

(E) Section 5, Fire-fighting measures;

(F) Section 6, Accidental release measures;

(G) Section 7, Handling and storage;

(H) Section 8, Exposure controls/personal protection;

(I) Section 9, Physical and chemical properties;

(J) Section 10, Stability and reactivity;

(K) Section 11, Toxicological information;

(L) Section 12, Ecological information;

(M) Section 13, Disposal considerations;

(N) Section 14, Transport information;

(O) Section 15, Regulatory information; and

(P) Section 16, Other information, including date of preparation or last revision.

(Q) A description in lay terms, if not otherwise provided, on either a separate sheet or with the body of the information specified in this section, of the specific potential health risks posed by the hazardous chemical intended to alert any person reading the information.

NOTE TO SECTION 5194 (g)(2): To be consistent with the GHS, an SDS must also include the headings in section 5194 (g)(2)(L) through (g)(2)(P) in order.

(3) If no relevant information is found for any sub-heading within a section on the safety data sheet, the manufacturer, importer, or employer preparing the safety data sheet shall mark it to indicate that no information was found. If the category is not applicable to the hazardous chemical involved, the space shall be marked to indicate that.

(4) Where complex mixtures have similar hazards and contents (i.e. the chemical ingredients are essentially the same, but the specific composition varies from mixture to mixture), the manufacturer, importer or employer may prepare one safety data sheet to apply to all of these similar mixtures.

(5) The manufacturer, importer or employer preparing the safety data sheet shall ensure that the information provided accurately reflects the scientific evidence used in making the hazard classification. If the manufacturer, importer, or employer become aware of any significant information regarding the hazards of a chemical, or ways to protect against the hazards, this new information shall be added to the safety data sheet within three months. If the chemical is not currently being produced or imported, the manufacturer or importer shall add the information to the safety data sheet before the chemical is introduced into the workplace again.

(6) Manufacturers or importers shall ensure that distributors and purchasers of hazardous chemicals are provided an appropriate safety data sheet with their initial shipment, and with the first shipment after a safety data sheet is updated. The manufacturer or importer shall either provide safety data sheets with the shipped containers or send them to the purchaser prior to or at the time of the shipment. If the safety data sheet is not provided with the shipment, the purchaser shall obtain one from the manufacturer, importer, or distributor as soon as possible. The manufacturer or importer shall also provide distributors or employers with a safety data sheet upon request.

(7) Distributors shall ensure that safety data sheets, and updated information, are provided to other distributors and purchasers of hazardous chemicals.

(8) The employer shall maintain copies of the required safety data sheets for each hazardous chemical in the workplace, and shall ensure that they are readily accessible during each work shift to employees when they are in their work area(s). (Electronic access and other alternatives to maintaining paper copies of the safety data sheets are permitted as long as no barriers to immediate employee access in each workplace are created by such options.)

(9) Where employees must travel between workplaces during a workshift, i.e., their work is carried out at more than one geographical location, the safety data sheets may be kept at a central location at the primary workplace facility. In this situation, the employer shall ensure that employees can immediately obtain the required information in an emergency.

(10) Safety data sheets may be kept in any form, including operating procedures, and may be designed to cover groups of hazardous chemicals in a work area where it may be more appropriate to address the hazards of a process rather than individual hazardous chemicals. However, the employer shall ensure that in all cases the required information is provided for each hazardous chemical and is readily accessible during each work shift to employees when they are in their work area(s).

(11) Safety data sheets shall also be made readily available, upon request, to designated representatives, and to the Chief, in accordance with the requirements of section 3204(e). NIOSH and the employee's physician shall also be given access to safety data sheets in the same manner.

(12) If the safety data sheet, or any item of information required by section 5194(g)(2), is not provided by the manufacturer or importer, the employer shall:

(A) Within 7 working days of noting this missing information, either from a request or in attempting to comply with section 5194(g)(1), make written inquiry to the manufacturer or importer of a hazardous chemical responsible for the safety data sheet, asking that the complete safety data sheet be sent to the employer. If the employer has made written inquiry in the preceding 12 months as to whether the chemical or product is subject to the requirements of the Act or the employer has made written inquiry within the last 6 months requesting new, revised or later information on the safety data sheet for the hazardous chemical, the employer need not make additional written inquiry.

(B) Notify the requester in writing of the date that the inquiry was made, to whom it was made, and the response, if any, received. Providing the requestor with a copy of the inquiry sent to the manufacturer, producer or seller and a copy of the response will satisfy this requirement.

(C) Notify the requestor of the availability of the safety data sheet within 15 days of the receipt of the safety data sheet from the manufacturer, producer or seller or provide a copy of the safety data sheet to the requestor within 15 days of the receipt of the safety data sheet from the manufacturer, producer or seller.

(D) Send the Director a copy of the written inquiry if a response has not been received within 25 working days.

(13) The preparer of a safety data sheet shall provide the Director with a copy of the safety data sheet. Where a trade secret claim is made, the preparer shall submit the information specified in section 5194(i)(15).

(h) Employee Information and Training.

(1) Employers shall provide employees with effective information and training on hazardous chemicals in their work area at the time of their initial assignment, and whenever a new chemical hazard is introduced into their work area. Information and training may relate to general classes of hazardous chemicals to the extent appropriate and related to reasonably foreseeable exposures of the job. Chemical-specific information must always be available through labels and safety data sheets.

(2) Information and training shall consist of at least the following topics:

(A) Employees shall be informed of the requirements of this section.

(B) Employees shall be informed of any operations in their work area where hazardous chemicals are present.

(C) Employees shall be informed of the location and availability of the written hazard communication program, including the list(s) of hazardous chemicals and safety data sheets required by this section.

(D) Employees shall be trained in the methods and observations that may be used to detect the presence or release of a hazardous chemical in the work area (such as monitoring conducted by the employer, continuous monitoring devices, visual appearance or odor of hazardous chemicals when being released, etc.).

(E) Employees shall be trained in the physical, health, simple asphyxiation, combustible dust and pyrophoric gas hazards, as well as hazards not otherwise classified, of the chemicals in the work area, and the measures they can take to protect themselves from these hazards, including specific procedures the employer has implemented to protect employees from exposure to hazardous chemicals, such as appropriate work practices, emergency procedures, and personal protective equipment to be used.

(F) Employees shall be trained in the details of the hazard communication program developed by the employer, including an explanation of the labels received on shipped containers and the workplace labeling system used by their employer and the safety data sheet, and how employees can obtain and use the appropriate hazard information.

(G) Employers shall inform employees of the right:

1. To personally receive information regarding hazardous chemicals to which they may be exposed, according to the provisions of this section;

2. For their physician or collective bargaining agent to receive information regarding hazardous chemicals to which the employee may be exposed according to provisions of this section;

3. Against discharge or other discrimination due to the employee's exercise of the rights afforded pursuant to the provisions of the Hazardous Substances Information and Training Act.

(3) Whenever the employer receives a new or revised safety data sheet, such information shall be provided to employees on a timely basis not to exceed 30 days after receipt, if the new information indicates significantly increased risks to, or measures necessary to protect, employee health as compared to those stated on a safety data sheet previously provided.

(i) Trade Secrets.

(1) The manufacturer, importer or employer may withhold the specific chemical identity of a hazardous chemical, or the exact percentage (concentration) of the substance in a mixture, from the safety data sheet, provided that:

(A) The claim that the information withheld is a trade secret can be supported;

(B) Information contained in the safety data sheet concerning the properties and effects of the hazardous chemical is disclosed;

(C) The safety data sheet indicates that the specific chemical identity and/or percentage of composition is being withheld as a trade secret; and,

(D) The specific chemical identity and percentage is made available to health or safety professionals, employees, and designated representatives in accordance with the applicable provisions of this subsection.

(2) Where a treating physician or nurse determines that a medical emergency exists and the specific chemical identity and/or specific percentage of composition of a hazardous chemical is necessary for emergency or first-aid treatment, the manufacturer, importer, or employer shall immediately disclose the specific chemical identity or percentage composition of a trade secret chemical to that treating physician or nurse, regardless of the existence of a written statement of need or a confidentiality agreement. The manufacturer, importer, or employer may require a written statement of need and confidentiality agreement, in accordance with the provisions of sections 5194(i)(3) and (4), as soon as circumstances permit.

(3) In non-emergency situations, a manufacturer, importer, or employer shall, upon request, disclose a specific chemical identity or percentage composition, otherwise permitted to be withheld under section 5194(i)(1), to a health or safety professional (i.e., physician, nurse, industrial hygienist, safety professional, toxicologist, or epidemiologist) providing medical or other occupational health services to exposed employee(s), and to employees and designated representatives, if:

(A) The request is in writing;

(B) The request describes with reasonable detail one or more of the following occupational health needs for the information:

1. To assess the hazards of the chemicals to which employees will be exposed;

2. To conduct or assess sampling of the workplace atmosphere to determine employee exposure levels;

3. To conduct pre-assignment or periodic medical surveillance of exposed employees;

4. To provide medical treatment to exposed employees;

5. To select or assess appropriate personal protective equipment for exposed employees;

6. To design or assess engineering controls or other protective measures for exposed employees; and,

7. To conduct studies to determine the health effects of exposure.

(C) The request explains in detail why the disclosure of the specific chemical identity or percentage composition is essential and that, in lieu thereof, the disclosure of the following information would not enable the health or safety professional, employee or designated representative to provide the occupational health services described in section 5194(i)(3)(B):

1. The properties and effects of the chemical;

2. Measures for controlling workers' exposure to the chemical;

3. Methods of monitoring and analyzing worker exposure to the chemical; and,

4. Methods of diagnosing and treating harmful exposures to the chemical;

(D) The request includes a description of the procedures to be used to maintain the confidentiality of the disclosed information; and,

(E) The health or safety professional,employee, or designated representative and the employer or contractor of the health or safety professional's services (i.e., downstream employer, labor organization, or individual employee), agree in a written confidentiality agreement that the health or safety professional, employee, or designated representative will not use the trade secret information for any purpose other than the health need(s) asserted and agree not to release the information under any circumstances other than to the Director, as provided in section 5194(i)(6), except as authorized by the terms of the agreement or by the manufacturer, importer, or employer.

(4) The confidentiality agreement authorized by section 5194(i)(3)(D) shall not include requirements for the posting of a penalty bond.

(5) Nothing in this standard is meant to preclude the parties from pursuing non-contractual remedies to the extent permitted by law.

(6) If the health or safety professional, employee, or designated representative receiving the trade secret information decides that there is a need to disclose it to the Director, then the manufacturer, importer, or employer who provided the information shall be informed by the health or safety professional, employee, or designated representative prior to, or at the same time as, such disclosure.

(7) If the manufacturer, importer, or employer denies a written request for disclosure of a specific chemical identity or percentage composition, the denial must:

(A) Be provided to the health or safety professional, employee, or designated representative within thirty days of the request;

(B) Be in writing;

(C) Include evidence to support the claim that the specific chemical identity or percent of composition is a trade secret;

(D) State the specific reasons why the request is being denied; and,

(E) Explain in detail how alternative information may satisfy the specific medical or occupational health need without revealing the trade secret.

(8) The health or safety professional, employee, or designated representative whose request for information is denied under section 5194(i)(3) may refer the request and the written denial of the request to the Director for consideration.

(9) When a health or safety professional, employee, or designated representative refers the denial to the Director under section 5194(i)(8), or upon the Director's own initiative when receiving information pursuant to section 5194(g)(13) which is claimed to be a trade secret, the Director shall consider the evidence to determine if:

(A) The manufacturer, importer, or employer has supported the claim that the specific chemical identity or percentage composition is a trade secret;

(B) The health or safety professional,employee, or designated representatives has supported the claim that there is a medical or occupational health need for the information; and,

(C) The health or safety professional,employee, or designated representative has demonstrated adequate means to protect the confidentiality.

(10) If the Director determines that the specific chemical identity or percentage composition requested under section 5194(i)(3) is not a *bona fide* trade secret, or that it is a trade secret but the requesting health or safety professional, employee, or designated representative has a legitimate medical or occupational health need for the information, has executed a written confidentiality agreement, and has shown adequate means to protect the confidentiality of the information, the manufacturer, importer, or employer will be subject to citation by the Director. The Director shall so notify the manufacturer, importer, or employer by certified mail.

(11) The manufacturer, importer, or employer shall have 15 days after receipt of notification under section 5194(i)(10) to provide the Director with a complete justification and statement of the grounds on which the trade secret privilege is claimed. This justification and statement shall be submitted by certified mail.

(12) The Director shall determine whether such information is protected as a trade secret within 15 days after receipt of the justification and statement required by section 5194(i)(11), or if no justification and statement is filed, within 30 days of the original notice, and shall notify the employer or manufacturer and any party who has requested the information pursuant to the California Public Records Act of that determination by certified mail. If the Director determines that the information is not protected as a trade secret, the final notice shall also specify a date, not sooner than 15 days after the date of mailing of the final notice, when the information shall be available to the public.

(13) Prior to the date specified in the final notice provided pursuant to section 5194(i)(12), a manufacturer, importer, or employer may institute an action in an appropriate superior court for a declaratory judgment as to whether such information is subject to protection from disclosure.

(14) If a manufacturer, importer, or employer demonstrates to the Director that the execution of a confidentiality agreement as provided for by section 5194(i)(10) would not provide sufficient protection against the potential harm from the unauthorized disclosure of a trade secret specific chemical identity, the Director may issue such orders to impose such additional limitations or conditions upon the disclosure of the requested information as may be appropriate to assure that the occupational health services are provided without an undue risk of harm to the manufacturer, importer, or employer.

(15) Notwithstanding the existence of a trade secret claim, a manufacturer, importer, or employer shall disclose to the Director the specific chemical identity or percentage composition of any hazardous chemical in a product for which trade secrecy is claimed. Where there is a trade secret claim, such claim shall be made no later than at the time the information is provided to the Director so that suitable determinations of trade secret status can be made and the necessary protections can be implemented.

(16) Nothing in section 5194(i) shall be construed as requiring the disclosure under any circumstances of process or percentage of mixture information which is a trade secret.

(j) Effective dates.

(1) Employers shall train employees regarding the new label elements and safety data sheets format by December 1, 2013.

(2) Manufacturers, importers, distributors, and employers shall be in compliance with all modified provisions of this section no later than June 1, 2015, except:

(A) After December 1, 2015, the distributor shall not ship containers labeled by the manufacturer or importer unless the label has been modified to comply with section 5194(f)(1).

(B) All employers shall, as necessary, update any alternative workplace labeling used under section 5194 (f)(6), update the hazard communication program required by section 5194(h)(1), and provide any additional employee training in accordance with section 5194(h)(3) for newly identified physical or health hazards no later than June 1, 2016.

(3) Manufacturers, importers, distributors, and employers may comply with either section 5194 revised as of July 6, 2004, or the current version of this standard, or both during the transition period.

(k) Appendices.

(1) Appendices A to E of this section are incorporated as part of this section and the provisions are mandatory.

(2) Appendix F contains information which is not intended to create any additional obligations not otherwise imposed or to detract from any existing obligation.

(3) Appendix G contains the following 22 CCR Sections: 12201(a), 12201(b), 12201(c), 12201(d), 12201(f), 12201(k), 12502, 12601, 12701(a), 12701(b), 12701(d), 12703, 12705, 12707, 12709, 12711, 12721, 12801, 12803, 12805, 12821, and 12901 in effect on May 9, 1991 that are referred to in subsection (b)(6).

Note: Authority cited: Sections 50.7, 142.3 and 6398, Labor Code. Reference: Sections 50.7, 142.3 and 6361-6399.7, Labor Code; Sections 25249.6, 25249.7, 25249.8, 25249.10, 25249.11, 25249.12 and 25249.13, Health and Safety Code; *California Lab. Federation v. Occupational Safety and Health Stds. Bd.* (1990) 221 Cal.App.3d 1547 [271 Cal. Rptr. 310]; and *United Steelworkers of America v. Auchter* (3d Cir. 1985) 763 F.2d 728.

HISTORY

1. New section filed 12-9-81; designated effective 180 days following adoption of a list of hazardous substances pursuant to the Act by the Director, Department of Industrial Relations (Register 81, No. 50).

2. Repealer and new section (including appendices A-C) filed 11-22-85; designated effective 11-25-85 pursuant to Government Code section 11346.2(d) (Register 85, No. 47).

3. Order of Repeal of subsection (a) pursuant to Government Code section 11342(b), amendment, and new appendix D filed 5-26-87; operative 6-25-87 (Register 87, No. 23).

4. Change without regulatory effect removing chapter heading filed 3-6-91; operative 4-4-91 (Register 91, No. 15).

5. Change without regulatory effect repealing Article 110 heading "Special Hazardous Substances and Processes" filed 3-6-91 pursuant to section 100, title 1, California Code of Regulations (Register 91, No. 15).

6. New subsections (b)(6)(A)-(E) and (k)(3) filed 5-31-91 as an emergency; operative 5-31-91 (Register 91, No. 33). A Certificate of Compliance must be transmitted to OAL by 9-30-91 or emergency language will be repealed by operation of law on the following day.

7. Amendment of section filed 9-30-91 as an emergency; operative 9-30-91 (Register 92, No. 2). A Certificate of Compliance must be transmitted to OAL 1-28-92 or emergency language will be repealed by operation of law on the following day.

8. Repealed by operation of Government Code section 11346.1(g) (Register 92, No. 12).

9. New subsections (b)(6)(A)-(F) and (k)(3) refiled 12-17-91; operative 12-17-91. Certificate of Compliance included (Register 92, No. 12).

10. Change without regulatory effect amending definitions of Chief, Department, and Director in subsection (c) filed 3-4-92 pursuant to section 100, title 1, California Code of Regulations (Register 92, No. 19).

11. New subsections (b)(5)(I)-(b)(5)(I)3. and (e)(2)(A)-(C), new subsection (g)(2)(a)3.b. and subsection relettering, new subsection (g)(9) and subsection renumbering, and amendment of subsections (b)(4)(B), (b)(5)(H), (d)(3)(A), (d)(3)(C), (d)(4)-(d)(4)(B), (d)(5)(D), (e)(1), (e)(2), (f), (f)(1), (g)(1), (g)(2)(G), (g)(8), (h)(2)(C), (i)(9), (i)(16) and newly designated subsections (g)(10) and (g)(12)(D) filed 4-26-93; operative 5-26-93 (Register 93, No. 18).

12. Editorial correction of History 9 (Register 94, No. 13).

13. Change without regulatory effect amending subsection (g)(12)(A) filed 12-14-94 pursuant to section 100, title 1, California Code of Regulations (Register 94, No. 50).

14. Repealer of note to subsection (f) filed 9-4-97; operative 10-4-97 (Register 97, No. 36).

15. Change without regulatory effect changing subsection (k) designator to subsection (j) designator filed 3-15-99 pursuant to section 100, title 1, California Code of Regulations (Register 99, No. 12).

16. Amendment of subsections (b)(5)(C), (d)(3)(C) and (d)(4)(A)-(B), new subsection (f)(10) and amendment of subsections (g)(2), (g)(2)(G), (g)(6), (g)(8) and (h)(1) filed 7-6-2004; operative 7-6-2004. Submitted to OAL for printing only pursuant to Labor Code section 142.3(a)(3) (Register 2004, No. 28).

17. Amendment filed 5-6-2013; operative 5-6-2013 pursuant to Labor Code section 142.3(a)(4)(C). Submitted to OAL for printing only pursuant to Labor Code section 142.3(a)(4) (Register 2013, No. 19).

18. Change without regulatory effect amending subsection (g)(2)(Q) filed 9-17-2013 pursuant to section 100, title 1, California Code of Regulations (Register 2013, No. 38).

19. Amendment refiled 11-6-2013; operative 11-6-2013 pursuant to Labor Code section 142.3(a)(4)(C). Submitted to OAL for printing only pursuant to Labor Code section 142.3(a)(4) (Register 2013, No. 45).

20. Repealer of 11-6-2013 order by operation of law 5-6-2014 pursuant to Labor Code 142.3 (Register 2014, No. 19).

21. Amendment of definition of "Combustible Liquid," and repealer of definitions of "Flammable" and "Flashpoint" within subsection (c) filed 5-5-2014; operative 5-6-2014 pursuant to Government Code section 11343.4(b)(3) (Register 2014, No. 19).

22. Amendment filed 5-5-2014; operative 5-6-2014 pursuant to Government Code section 11343.4(b)(3) (Register 2014, No. 19).

23. Editorial correction of subsection (g)(2)(Q) - Note (Register 2015, No. 37).

24. Change without regulatory effect amending definition of "Safety Data Sheet (SDS)" within subsection (c) filed 1-6-2016 pursuant to section 100, title 1, California Code of Regulations (Register 2016, No. 2).

This database is current through 9/28/18 Register 2018, No. 39

Go Back to Article 109 Table of Contents

This information is provided free of charge by the Department of Industrial Relations from its web site at www.dir.ca.gov. These regulations are for the convenience of the user and no representation or warranty is made that the information is current or accurate. See full disclaimer at https://www.dir.ca.gov/od_pub/disclaimer.html.

Subchapter 7. General Industry Safety Orders
Group 16. Control of Hazardous Substances
Article 109. Hazardous Substances and Processes

Return to index
New query

---

§5199. Aerosol Transmissible Diseases.

Contents

(a) Scope and Application

(b) Definitions

(c) Referring Employers

(d) Aerosol Transmissible Diseases Exposure Control Plan

(e) Engineering and Work Practice Controls and Personal Protective Equipment

(f) Laboratories

(g) Respiratory Protection

(h) Medical Services

(i) Training

(j) Recordkeeping

(a) Scope and Application.

(1) Scope. This section applies to work in the following facilities, service categories, or operations:

(A) Each of the following health care facilities, services, or operations:

1. Hospitals
2. Skilled nursing facilities
3. Clinics, medical offices, and other outpatient medical facilities
4. Facilities where high hazard procedures, as defined in subsection (b), are performed
5. Home health care
6. Long term health care facilities and hospices
7. Medical outreach services
8. Paramedic and emergency medical services including these services when provided by firefighters and other emergency responders
9. Medical transport

(B) Facilities, services, or operations that are designated to receive persons arriving from the scene of an uncontrolled release of hazardous substances involving biological agents, as defined in Section 5192, Hazardous Waste Operations and Emergency Response, of these orders.

(C) Police services, provided during transport or detention of persons reasonably anticipated to be cases or suspected cases of aerosol transmissible diseases; and police services provided in conjunction with health care or public health operations.

(D) Public health services, such as communicable disease contact tracing or screening programs that are reasonably anticipated to be provided to cases or suspected cases of aerosol transmissible diseases, and public health services rendered in health care facilities or in connection with the provision of health care.

(E) The following facilities, services or operations that are identified as being at increased risk for transmission of aerosol transmissible disease (ATD) infection:

1. Correctional facilities and other facilities that house inmates or detainees
2. Homeless shelters
3. Drug treatment programs

(F) Facilities, services or operations that perform aerosol-generating procedures on cadavers such as pathology laboratories, medical examiners' facilities, coroners' offices, and mortuaries.

(G) Laboratories that perform procedures with materials that contain or are reasonably anticipated to contain aerosol transmissible pathogens - laboratory (ATP-L) or zoonotic aerosol transmissible pathogens as defined in Section 5199.1.

(H) Any other facility, service or operation that has been determined in writing by the Chief of the Division of Occupational Safety and Health through the issuance of an Order to Take Special Action, in accordance with Section 332.3 of these orders, to require application of this standard as a measure to protect employees.

(I) Maintenance, renovation, service, or repair operations involving air handling systems or equipment or building areas that may reasonably be anticipated to be contaminated with aerosol transmissible pathogens (ATPs) or ATPs-L, including:

1. Areas in which Airborne Infectious Disease (AirID) cases and suspected cases are treated or housed.
2. Air handling systems that serve airborne infection isolation rooms or areas (AIIRs).
3. Equipment such as laboratory hoods, biosafety cabinets, and ventilation systems that are used to contain infectious aerosols.

NOTES to subsection (a)(1):

(1) Employers who conduct hazardous waste and emergency response operations, as defined in Section 5192 of these orders, shall also comply with the applicable requirements of Section 5192.

(2) Occupational exposure to animals infected by aerosol transmissible pathogens which cause human disease are regulated by Section 5199.1 of these orders.

(2) The following are not covered by this standard:

(A) Outpatient dental clinics or offices are not required to comply with this standard if they meet all of the following conditions:

1. Dental procedures are not performed on patients identified to them as ATD cases or suspected ATD cases.

2. The Injury and Illness Prevention Program includes a written procedure for screening patients for ATDs that is consistent with current guidelines issued by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) for infection control in dental settings, and this procedure is followed before performing any dental procedure on a patient to determine whether the patient may present an ATD exposure risk.

3. Employees have been trained in the screening procedure in accordance with Section 3203.

4. Aerosol generating dental procedures are not performed on a patient identified through the screening procedure as presenting a possible ATD exposure risk unless a licensed physician determines that the patient does not currently have an ATD.

(B) Outpatient medical specialty practices whose policy is not to diagnose or treat ATDs are not required to comply with this standard if they meet all of the following conditions:

1. The medical specialty practice does not perform aerosol-generating procedures on cases or suspected cases of ATD;

2. The Injury and Illness Prevention Program includes written screening procedures to identify potential ATD cases, and then refer those patients for further evaluation to an appropriate medical provider;

3. Employees have been trained in the screening procedure in accordance with Section 3203.

(3) Application.

(A) Referring Employers. A referring employer is required only to comply with the provisions of subsection (a), subsection (c), including all parts of Section 5199 referred to in subsection (c), and subsection (j). To be a referring employer, the operation, service or facility must conform to each of the following, as indicated:

1. Screen persons for airborne infectious diseases (AirID).

2. Refer any person identified as a case or suspected case of AirID.

3. Not intend to provide further medical services to AirID cases and suspected cases beyond first aid, initial treatment or screening and referral as described in subsections (a)(3)(A)1 and (a)(3)(A)2 immediately above.

4. Not provide transport, housing, or airborne infection isolation (as defined in subsection (b)) to any person identified as an AirID case or suspected case, unless the transport provided is only non-medical transport in the course of a referral.

(B) Laboratories. A laboratory facility or operation in which employees do not have direct contact with cases or suspected cases of ATD or with potentially infected cadavers is required to comply only with the provisions of subsection (a), subsection (f), all provisions of Section 5199 referred to in subsection (f), subsection (i) and subsection (j).

(C) Work settings, operations, or facilities included within the scope of this standard that are not identified in subsections (a)(3)(A) or (a)(3)(B) shall comply with subsections (a), (d), (e), (f), (g), (h), (i), and (j).

(4) The employer shall provide all safeguards required by this section, including provision of personal protective equipment, respirators, training, and medical services, at no cost to the employee, at a reasonable time and place for the employee, and during the employee's working hours.

(b) Definitions.

Accredited laboratory. A laboratory that is licensed by the CDPH pursuant to Title 17 of the California Code of Regulations (CCR), or which has received a certification of competence based on participation in a quality assurance program administered by a governmental or private organization that tests and certifies laboratories.

Aerosol transmissible disease (ATD) or aerosol transmissible pathogen (ATP). A disease or pathogen for which droplet or airborne precautions are required, as listed in Appendix A.

Aerosol transmissible pathogen - laboratory (ATP-L). A pathogen that meets one of the following criteria: (1) the pathogen appears on the list in Appendix D, (2) the Biosafety in Microbiological and Biomedical Laboratories (BMBL) recommends biosafety level 3 or above for the pathogen, (3) the biological safety officer recommends biosafety level 3 or above for the pathogen, or (4) the pathogen is a novel or unknown pathogen.

Airborne infection isolation (AII). Infection control procedures as described in Guidelines for Preventing the Transmission of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in Health-Care Settings. These procedures are designed to reduce the risk of transmission of airborne infectious pathogens, and apply to patients known or suspected to be infected with epidemiologically important pathogens that can be transmitted by the airborne route.

Airborne infection isolation room or area (AIIR). A room, area, booth, tent, or other enclosure that is maintained at negative pressure to adjacent areas in order to control the spread of aerosolized *M. tuberculosis* and other airborne infectious pathogens and that meets the requirements stated in subsection (e)(5)(D) of this standard.

Airborne infectious disease (AirID). Either: (1) an aerosol transmissible disease transmitted through dissemination of airborne droplet nuclei, small particle aerosols, or dust particles containing the disease agent for which AII is recommended by the CDC or CDPH, as listed in Appendix A, or (2) the disease process caused by a novel or unknown pathogen for which there is no evidence to rule out with reasonable certainty the possibility that the pathogen is transmissible through dissemination of airborne droplet nuclei, small particle aerosols, or dust particles containing the novel or unknown pathogen.

Airborne infectious pathogen (AirIP). Either: (1) an aerosol transmissible pathogen transmitted through dissemination of airborne droplet nuclei, small particle aerosols, or dust particles containing the infectious agent, and for which the CDC or CDPH recommends AII, as listed in Appendix A, or (2) a novel or unknown pathogen for which there is no evidence to rule out with reasonable certainty the possibility that it is transmissible through dissemination of airborne droplet nuclei, small particle aerosols, or dust particles containing the novel or unknown pathogen.

Biological safety officer(s). A person who is qualified by training and/or experience to evaluate hazards associated with laboratory procedures involving ATPs-L, who is knowledgeable about the facility biosafety plan, and who is authorized by the employer to establish and implement effective control measures for laboratory biological hazards.

Biosafety level 3. Compliance with the criteria for laboratory practices, safety equipment, and facility design and construction recommended by the CDC in Biosafety in Microbiological and Biomedical Laboratories for laboratories in which work is done with indigenous or exotic agents with a potential for aerosol transmission and which may cause serious or potentially lethal infection.

Biosafety in Microbiological and Biomedical Laboratories (BMBL). Biosafety in Microbiological and Biomedical Laboratories, Fifth Edition, CDC and National Institutes for Health, 2007, which is hereby incorporated by reference for the purpose of establishing biosafety requirements in laboratories.

CDC. United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

CDPH. California Department of Public Health and its predecessor, the California Department of Health Services (CDHS).

Case. Either of the following:

(1) A person who has been diagnosed by a health care provider who is lawfully authorized to diagnose, using clinical judgment or laboratory evidence, to have a particular disease or condition.

(2) A person who is considered a case of a disease or condition that satisfies the most recent communicable disease surveillance case definitions established by the CDC and published in the Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (MMWR) or its supplements.

Chief. The Chief of the Division of Occupational Safety and Health of the Department of Industrial Relations, or his or her designated representative.

CTCA. The California Tuberculosis Controllers Association.

Droplet precautions. Infection control procedures as described in Guideline for Isolation Precautions designed to reduce the risk of transmission of infectious agents through contact of the conjunctivae or the mucous membranes of the nose or mouth of a susceptible person with large-particle droplets (larger than 5 m m in size) containing microorganisms generated from a person who has a clinical disease or who is a carrier of the microorganism.

Drug treatment program. A program that is (A) licensed pursuant to Chapter 7.5 (commencing with Section 11834.01), Part 2, Division 10.5 of the Health and Safety Code; or Chapter 1 (commencing with Section 11876), Part 3, Article 3, Division 10.5 of the Health and Safety Code; or (B) certified as a substance abuse clinic or satellite clinic pursuant to Section 51200, Title 22, CCR, and which has submitted claims for Medi-Cal reimbursement pursuant to Section 51490.1, Title 22, CCR, within the last two calendar years or (C) certified pursuant to Section 11831.5 of the Health and Safety Code.

Emergency medical services. Medical care provided pursuant to Title 22, Division 9, by employees who are certified EMT-1, certified EMT-II, or licensed paramedic personnel to the sick and injured at the scene of an emergency, during transport, or during interfacility transfer.

Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases. Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atkinson W, Hamborsky J, McIntyre L, Wolfe S, eds. 10th ed. 2nd printing, including chapters from the 9th edition on Anthrax and Smallpox, Washington DC: Public Health Foundation, 2008, which is hereby incorporated by reference.

Exposure incident. An event in which all of the following have occurred: (1) An employee has been exposed to an individual who is a case or suspected case of a reportable ATD, or to a work area or to equipment that is reasonably expected to contain ATPs associated with a reportable ATD; and (2) The exposure occurred without the benefit of applicable exposure controls required by this section, and (3) It reasonably appears from the circumstances of the exposure that transmission of disease is sufficiently likely to require medical evaluation.

Exposure incident (laboratory). A significant exposure to an aerosol containing an ATP-L, without the benefit of applicable exposure control measures required by this section.

Field operation. An operation conducted by employees that is outside of the employer's fixed establishment, such as paramedic and emergency medical services or transport, law enforcement, home health care, and public health.

Guideline for Isolation Precautions. The Guideline for Isolation Precautions: Preventing Transmission of Infectious Agents in Healthcare Settings, June 2007, CDC, which is hereby incorporated by reference for the sole purpose of establishing requirements for droplet and contact precautions.

Guidelines for Preventing the Transmission of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in Health-Care Settings. The Guidelines for Preventing the Transmission of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in Health-Care Settings, December 2005, CDC, which is hereby incorporated by reference for the sole purpose of establishing requirements for airborne infection isolation.

Health care provider. A physician and surgeon, a veterinarian, a podiatrist, a nurse practitioner, a physician assistant, a registered nurse, a nurse midwife, a school nurse, an infection control practitioner, a medical examiner, a coroner, or a dentist.

Health care worker. A person who works in a health care facility, service or operation, or who has occupational exposure in a public health service described in subsection (a)(1)(D).

High hazard procedures. Procedures performed on a person who is a case or suspected case of an aerosol transmissible disease or on a specimen suspected of containing an ATP-L, in which the potential for being exposed to aerosol transmissible pathogens is increased due to the reasonably anticipated generation of aerosolized pathogens. Such procedures include, but are not limited to, sputum induction, bronchoscopy, aerosolized administration of pentamidine or other medications, and pulmonary function testing. High Hazard Procedures also include, but are not limited to, autopsy, clinical, surgical and laboratory procedures that may aerosolize pathogens.

Individually identifiable medical information. Medical information that includes or contains any element of personal identifying information sufficient to allow identification of the individual, such as the patient's name, address, electronic mail address, telephone number, or social security number, or other information that, alone or in combination with other publicly available information, reveals the individual's identity.

Infection control PLHCP. A PLHCP who is knowledgeable about infection control practices, including routes of transmission, isolation precautions and the investigation of exposure incidents.

Initial treatment. Treatment provided at the time of the first contact a health care provider has with a person who is potentially an AirID case or suspected case. Initial treatment does not include high hazard procedures.

Laboratory. A facility or operation in a facility where the manipulation of specimens or microorganisms is performed for the purpose of diagnosing disease or identifying disease agents, conducting research or experimentation on microorganisms, replicating microorganisms for distribution or related support activities for these processes.

Latent TB infection (LTBI). Infection with *M. tuberculosis* in which bacteria are present in the body, but are inactive. Persons who have LTBI but who do not have TB disease are asymptomatic, do not feel sick and cannot spread TB to other persons. They typically react positively to TB tests.

Local health officer. The health officer for the local jurisdiction responsible for receiving and/or sending reports of communicable diseases, as defined in Title 17, CCR.

NOTE: Title 17, Section 2500 requires that reports be made to the local health officer for the jurisdiction where the patient resides.

M. tuberculosis. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex, which includes *M. tuberculosis, M. bovis, M. africanum,* and *M. microti*. M. tuberculosis is the scientific name of the group of bacteria that cause tuberculosis.

Medical specialty practice. A medical practice other than primary care, general practice, or family medicine.

Negative pressure. A relative air pressure difference between two areas. The pressure in a containment room or area that is under negative pressure is lower than adjacent areas, which keeps air from flowing out of the containment facility and into adjacent rooms or areas.

NIOSH. The Director of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, CDC, or his or her designated representative.

Non-medical transport. The transportation by employees other than health care providers or emergency medical personnel during which no medical services are reasonably anticipated to be provided.

Novel or unknown ATP. A pathogen capable of causing serious human disease meeting the following criteria:

(1) There is credible evidence that the pathogen is transmissible to humans by aerosols; and

(2) The disease agent is:

(a) A newly recognized pathogen, or

(b) A newly recognized variant of a known pathogen and there is reason to believe that the variant differs significantly from the known pathogen in virulence or transmissibility, or

(c) A recognized pathogen that has been recently introduced into the human population, or

(d) A not yet identified pathogen.

NOTE: Variants of the human influenza virus that typically occur from season to season are not considered novel or unknown ATPs if they do not differ significantly in virulence or transmissibility from existing seasonal variants. Pandemic influenza strains that have not been fully characterized are novel pathogens.

Occupational exposure. Exposure from work activity or working conditions that is reasonably anticipated to create an elevated risk of contracting any disease caused by ATPs or ATPs-L if protective measures are not in place. In this context, "elevated" means higher than what is considered ordinary for employees having direct contact with the general public outside of the facilities, service categories and operations listed in subsection (a)(1) of this standard. Occupational exposure is presumed to exist to some extent in each of the facilities, services and operations listed in subsection (a)(1)(A) through (a)(1)(I). Whether a particular employee has occupational exposure depends on the tasks, activities, and environment of the employee, and therefore, some employees of a covered employer may have no occupational exposure. For example, occupational exposure typically does not exist where a hospital employee works only in an office environment separated from patient care facilities, or works only in other areas separate from those where the risk of ATD transmission, whether from patients or contaminated items, would be elevated without protective measures. It is the task of employers covered by this standard to identify those employees who have occupational exposure so that appropriate protective measures can be implemented to protect them as required. Employee activities that involve having contact with, or being within exposure range of cases or suspected cases of ATD, are always considered to cause occupational exposure. Similarly, employee activities that involve contact with, or routinely being within exposure range of, populations served by facilities identified in subsection (a)(1)(E) are considered to cause occupational exposure. Employees working in laboratory areas in which ATPs-L are handled or reasonably anticipated to be present are also considered to have occupational exposure.

Physician or other licensed health care professional (PLHCP) means an individual whose legally permitted scope or practice (i.e., license, registration, or certification) allows him or her to independently provide, or be delegated the responsibility to provide, some or all of the health care services required by this section.

Public health guidelines. (1) In regards to tuberculosis, applicable guidelines published by the CTCA and/or CDPH as follows, which are hereby incorporated by reference:

(A) Guidelines for Tuberculosis (TB) Screening and Treatment of Patients with Chronic Kidney Disease (CKD), Patients Receiving Hemodialysis (HD), Patients Receiving Peritoneal Dialysis (PD), Patients Undergoing Renal Transplantation and Employees of Dialysis Facilities, May 18, 2007.

(B) Guidelines for the Treatment of Active Tuberculosis Disease, April 15, 2003 including related material: Summary of Differences Between 2003 California and National Tuberculosis Treatment Guidelines, 2004, Amendment to Joint CDHS/CTCA Guidelines for the Treatment of Active Tuberculosis Disease, May 12, 2006, Appendix 3 - Algorithm for MDR-TB Cases and Hospital Discharge, May 12, 2006.

(C) Targeted Testing and Treatment of Latent Tuberculosis Infection in Adults and Children, May 12, 2006.

(D) California Tuberculosis Controllers Association Position Statement: The Utilization of QuantiFERON - TB Gold in California, May 18, 2007.

(E) Guidelines for Mycobacteriology Services in California, April 11, 1997.

(F) Guidelines for the Placement or Return of Tuberculosis Patients into High Risk Housing, Work, Correctional, or In-Patient Settings, April 11, 1997.

(G) Contact Investigation Guidelines, November 12, 1998.

(H) Source Case Investigation Guidelines, April 27, 2001.

(I) Guidelines on Prevention and Control of Tuberculosis in California Long-Term Health Care Facilities, October 2005.

(J) Guidelines for Reporting Tuberculosis Suspects and Cases in California, October 1997.

(K) CTCA recommendations for serial TB testing of Health Care Workers (CA Licensing and Certification), September 23, 2008.

(2) In regards to vaccine-preventable diseases, the publication cited in the definition of Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases.

(3) In regards to any disease or condition not addressed by the above guidelines, recommendations made by the CDPH or the local health officer pursuant to authority granted under the Health and Safety Code and/or Title 17, California Code of Regulations.

Referral. The directing or transferring of a possible ATD case to another facility, service or operation for the purposes of transport, diagnosis, treatment, isolation, housing or care.

Referring employer. Any employer that operates a facility, service, or operation in which there is occupational exposure and which refers AirID cases and suspected cases to other facilities. Referring facilities, services and operations do not provide diagnosis, treatment, transport, housing, isolation or management to persons requiring AII. General acute care hospitals are not referring employers. Law enforcement, corrections, public health, and other operations that provide only non-medical transport for referred cases are considered referring employers if they do not provide diagnosis, treatment, housing, isolation or management of referred cases.

Reportable aerosol transmissible disease (RATD). A disease or condition which a health care provider is required to report to the local health officer, in accordance with Title 17 CCR, Division 1, Chapter 4, and which meets the definition of an aerosol transmissible disease (ATD).

Respirator. A device which has met the requirements of 42 CFR Part 84, has been designed to protect the wearer from inhalation of harmful atmospheres, and has been approved by NIOSH. for the purpose for which it is used.

Respirator user. An employee who in the scope of their current job may be assigned to tasks which may require the use of a respirator, in accordance with subsection (g).

Respiratory Hygiene/Cough Etiquette in Health Care Settings. Respiratory Hygiene/Cough Etiquette in Health Care Settings, CDC, November 4, 2004, which is hereby incorporated by reference for the sole purpose of establishing requirements for source control procedures.

Screening (health care provider). The initial assessment of persons who are potentially AirID or ATD cases by a health care provider in order to determine whether they need airborne infection isolation or need to be referred for further medical evaluation or treatment to make that determination. Screening does not include high hazard procedures.

Screening (non health care provider). The identification of potential ATD cases through readily observable signs and the self-report of patients or clients. Screening does not include high hazard procedures.

Significant exposure. An exposure to a source of ATPs or ATPs-L in which the circumstances of the exposure make the transmission of a disease sufficiently likely that the employee requires further evaluation by a PLHCP.

Source control measures. The use of procedures, engineering controls, and other devices or materials to minimize the spread of airborne particles and droplets from an individual who has or exhibits signs or symptoms of having an ATD, such as persistent coughing.

Surge. A rapid expansion beyond normal services to meet the increased demand for qualified personnel, medical care, equipment, and public health services in the event of an epidemic, public health emergency, or disaster.

Susceptible person. A person who is at risk of acquiring an infection due to a lack of immunity as determined by a PLHCP in accordance with applicable public health guidelines.

Suspected case. Either of the following:

(1) A person whom a health care provider believes, after weighing signs, symptoms, and/or laboratory evidence, to probably have a particular disease or condition listed in Appendix A.

(2) A person who is considered a probable case, or an epidemiologically-linked case, or who has supportive laboratory findings under the most recent communicable disease surveillance case definition established by CDC and published in the Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (MMWR) or its supplements as applied to a particular disease or condition listed in Appendix A.

TB conversion. A change from negative to positive as indicated by TB test results, based upon current CDC or CDPH guidelines for interpretation of the TB test

Test for tuberculosis infection (TB test). Any test, including the tuberculin skin test and blood assays for *M. Tuberculosis* (BAMT) such as interferon gamma release assays (IGRAs) which: (1) has been approved by the Food and Drug Administration for the purposes of detecting tuberculosis infection, and (2) is recommended by the CDC for testing for TB infection in the environment in which it is used, and (3) is administered, performed, analyzed and evaluated in accordance with those approvals and guidelines.

NOTE: Where surveillance for LTBI is required by Title 22, CCR, the TB test must be approved for this use by the CDPH.

Tuberculosis (TB). A disease caused by *M. tuberculosis*.

UVGI. Ultraviolet germicidal irradiation.

(c) Referring Employers. In facilities, services, or operations in which there is occupational exposure and which meet the criteria specified by (a)(3)(A), employers are only required to comply with the following provisions:

(1) The employer shall designate a person as the administrator who will be responsible for the establishment, implementation and maintenance of effective written infection control procedures to control the risk of transmission of aerosol transmissible diseases. The administrator shall have the authority to perform this function and shall be knowledgeable in infection control principles as they apply specifically to the facility, service or operation. The administrator shall also identify in writing the job categories in which employees have occupational exposure to ATDs. When the administrator is not on site, there shall be a designated person with full authority to act on his or her behalf. The infection control procedures shall include procedures for the cleaning and disinfection of work areas, vehicles, and equipment that may become contaminated with ATPs and pose an infection risk to employees. The written procedures shall be available at the worksite.

(2) The employer shall establish, implement, and maintain effective written source control procedures. For fixed health care and correctional facilities, and in other facilities, services, and operations to the extent reasonably practicable, these procedures shall incorporate the recommendations contained in the Respiratory Hygiene/Cough Etiquette in Health Care Settings. These procedures shall include the method of informing persons with whom employees will have contact of the employer's source control measures.

(3) The employer shall establish, implement, and maintain effective written procedures for the screening and referral of cases and suspected cases of AirIDs to appropriate facilities.

(A) Transfers shall occur within 5 hours of the identification of the case or suspected case, unless:

(1) the initial encounter with the case or suspected case occurs after 3:30 p.m. and prior to 7 a.m., in which event the employer shall ensure that transfer occurs no later than 11:00 a.m.; or

(2) the employer has contacted the local health officer, determined that there is no facility that can provide appropriate AII, and complied with all of the conditions in (e)(5)(B)2.; or

(3) the case meets the conditions of either of the exceptions to subsection (e)(5)(B).

(B) When screening is provided by persons who are not health care providers, the employer shall meet the requirements of this section by establishing criteria and procedures for referral of persons to a health care provider for further evaluation within the timeframes in subsection (c)(3)(A). Referrals shall be provided to persons who do any of the following:

1. Have a cough for more than three weeks that is not explained by non-infectious conditions.

2. Exhibit signs and symptoms of a flu-like illness during March through October, the months outside of the typical period for seasonal influenza, or exhibit these signs and symptoms for a period longer than two weeks at any time during the year. These signs and symptoms generally include combinations of the following: coughing and other respiratory symptoms, fever, sweating, chills, muscle aches, weakness and malaise.

3. State that they have a transmissible respiratory disease, excluding the common cold and seasonal influenza.

4. State that they have been exposed to an infectious ATD case, other than seasonal influenza.

NOTES to subsection (c)(3):

1. Seasonal influenza does not require referral.

2. Appendix F contains sample criteria for screening that may be adopted by employers in non-medical settings for the purpose of meeting the requirements of this subsection.

(4) The employer shall establish, implement, and maintain effective written procedures to communicate with employees, other employers, and the local health officer regarding the suspected or diagnosed infectious disease status of referred patients. These shall include procedures to receive information from the facility to which patients were referred and to provide necessary infection control information to employees who were exposed to the referred person.

(5) The employer shall establish, implement and maintain effective written procedures to reduce the risk of transmission of aerosol transmissible disease, to the extent feasible, during the period the person requiring referral is in the facility or is in contact with employees. In addition to source control measures, these procedures shall include, to the extent feasible:

(A) placement of the person requiring referral in a separate room or area;

(B) provision of separate ventilation or filtration in the room or area; and

(C) employee use of respiratory protection when entering the room or area in which the person requiring referral is located, if that person is not compliant with source control measures. Respirator use shall meet the requirements of subsection (g) and Section 5144, Respiratory Protection, of these orders.

EXCEPTION to subsection (c)(5)(C): Law enforcement or corrections personnel who transport a person requiring referral in a vehicle need not use respiratory protection if all of the following conditions are met:

i. A solid partition separates the passenger area from the area where employees are located;

ii. The employer implements written procedures that specify the conditions of operation, including the operation of windows and fans;

iii. The employer tests (e.g., by the use of smoke tubes) the airflow in a representative vehicle (of the same model, year of manufacture, and partition design) under the specified conditions of operation, and finds that there is no detectable airflow from the passenger compartment to the employee area;

iv. The employer records the results of the tests and maintains the results in accordance with subsection (j)(3)(F); and

v. The person performing the test is knowledgeable about the assessment of ventilation systems.

(6) The employer shall establish a system of medical services for employees which meets the following requirements:

(A) The employer shall make available to all health care workers with occupational exposure all vaccinations recommended by the CDPH as listed in Appendix E in accordance with subsection (h). These vaccinations shall be provided by a PLHCP at a reasonable time and place for the employee.

(B) The employer shall develop, implement, and maintain effective written procedures for exposure incidents in accordance with subsections (h)(6) through (h)(9).

(C) The employer shall establish, implement, and maintain an effective surveillance program for LTBI in accordance with subsections (h)(3) and (h)(4).

(D) The employer shall establish, implement, and maintain effective procedures for providing vaccinations against seasonal influenza to all employees with occupational exposure, in accordance with subsection (h)(10).

EXCEPTION to subsection (c)(6)(D): Seasonal influenza vaccine shall be provided during the period designated by the CDC for administration and need not be provided outside of those periods.

(7) Employers shall ensure that all employees with occupational exposure participate in a training program. Training shall be provided at the time of initial assignment to tasks where occupational exposure may take place and at least annually thereafter. Additional training shall be provided when there are changes in the workplace or when there are changes in procedures that could affect worker exposure to ATPs. The person conducting the training shall be knowledgeable in the subject matter covered by the training program as it relates to the workplace. Training material appropriate in content and vocabulary to the educational level, literacy, and language of employees shall be used. This training shall include:

(A) A general explanation of ATDs including the signs and symptoms that require further medical evaluation;

(B) Screening methods and criteria for persons who require referral;

(C) The employer's source control measures and how these measures will be communicated to persons the employees contact;

(D) The employer's procedures for making referrals in accordance with subsection (c)(3);

(E) The employer's procedures for temporary risk reduction measures prior to transfer;

(F) Training in accordance with subsection (g) and Section 5144 of these orders, when respiratory protection is used;

(G) The employer's medical services procedures in accordance with subsection (h), the methods of reporting exposure incidents, and the employer's procedures for providing employees with post-exposure evaluation;

(H) Information on vaccines the employer will make available, including the seasonal influenza vaccine. For each vaccine, this information shall include the efficacy, safety, method of administration, the benefits of being vaccinated, and that the vaccine and vaccination will be offered free of charge;

(I) How employees can access the employer's written procedures and how employees can participate in reviewing the effectiveness of the employer's procedures in accordance with subsection (c)(8); and

(J) An opportunity for interactive questions and answers with a person who is knowledgeable in the subject matter as it relates to the workplace that the training addresses and who is also knowledgeable in the employer's infection control procedures. Training not given in person shall provide for interactive questions to be answered within 24 hours by a knowledgeable person.

(8) The employer shall ensure that the infection control procedures are reviewed at least annually by the administrator and by employees regarding the effectiveness of the program in their respective work areas, and that deficiencies found are corrected.

(9) The employer shall establish and maintain training records, vaccination records, records of exposure incidents, and records of inspection, testing, and maintenance of non-disposable engineering controls, in accordance with subsection (j). If the employer utilizes respirators, the employer shall maintain records of implementation of the Respiratory Protection Program in accordance with Section 5144, Respiratory Protection, of these orders.

(d) Aerosol Transmissible Diseases Exposure Control Plan.

(1) The employer shall establish, implement, and maintain an effective, written ATD Exposure Control Plan (Plan) which is specific to the work place or operation(s), and which contains all of the elements in subsection (d)(2).

EXCEPTION to subsection (d)(1): Employers with laboratory operations in which employees do not have direct patient contact may establish, implement and maintain an effective, written Biosafety Plan meeting the requirements of subsection (f) in lieu of an Exposure Control Plan for those operations.

(2) The Plan shall contain all of the following elements:

(A) The name(s) or title(s) of the person(s) responsible for administering the Plan. This person shall be knowledgeable in infection control principles and practices as they apply to the facility, service or operation.

(B) A list of all job classifications in which employees have occupational exposure.

(C) A list of all high hazard procedures performed in the facility, service or operation, and the job classifications and operations in which employees are exposed to those procedures.

(D) A list of all assignments or tasks requiring personal or respiratory protection.

(E) The methods of implementation of subsections (e), (g), (h), (i) and (j) as they apply to that facility, service or work operation. Specific control measures shall be listed for each operation or work area in which occupational exposure occurs. These measures shall include applicable engineering and work practice controls, cleaning and decontamination procedures, and personal protective equipment and respiratory protection. In establishments where the Plan pertains to laboratory operations, it also shall contain the methods of implementation for subsection (f), unless those operations are included in a Biosafety Plan.

(F) A description of the source control measures to be implemented in the facility, service or operation, and the method of informing people entering the work setting of the source control measures.

(G) The procedures the employer will use to identify, temporarily isolate, and refer or transfer AirID cases or suspected cases to AII rooms, areas or facilities. These procedures shall include the methods the employer will use to limit employee exposure to these persons during periods when they are not in airborne infection isolation rooms or areas. These procedures shall also include the methods the employer will use to document medical decisions not to transfer patients in need of AII in accordance with subsection (e)(5)(B).

(H) The procedures the employer will use to provide medical services, including recommended vaccinations and follow-up, as required in subsection (h). This shall include the procedures the employer will use to document the lack of availability of a recommended vaccine.

(I) The procedures for employees and supervisors to follow in the event of an exposure incident, including how the employer will determine which employees had a significant exposure, in accordance with subsections (h)(6) through (h)(9).

(J) The procedures the employer will use to evaluate each exposure incident, to determine the cause, and to revise existing procedures to prevent future incidents.

(K) The procedures the employer will use to communicate with its employees and other employers regarding the suspected or confirmed infectious disease status of persons to whom employees are exposed in the course of their duties, in accordance with subsection (h).

(L) The procedures the employer will use to communicate with other employers regarding exposure incidents, including procedures for providing or receiving notification to and from health care providers about the disease status of referred or transferred patients, in accordance with subsection (h).

(M) The procedures the employer will use to ensure that there is an adequate supply of personal protective equipment and other equipment necessary to minimize employee exposure to ATPs, in normal operations and in foreseeable emergencies.

(N) The procedures the employer will use to provide initial and annual training in accordance with subsection (i) to employees in job categories identified in subsection (d)(2)(B).

(O) The procedures the employer will use for recordkeeping, in accordance with subsection (j).

(P) An effective procedure for obtaining the active involvement of employees in reviewing and updating the exposure control plan with respect to the procedures performed in their respective work areas or departments in accordance with subsection (d)(3).

(Q) Surge procedures. Employers of employees who are designated to provide services in surge conditions, and employers of employees who are designated to provide services to persons who have been contaminated as the result of a release of a biological agent as described in subsection (a)(1)(B), shall include procedures for these activities in the plan. The plan shall include work practices, decontamination facilities, and appropriate personal protective equipment and respiratory protection for such events. The procedures shall include how respiratory and personal protective equipment will be stockpiled, accessed or procured, and how the facility or operation will interact with the local and regional emergency plan.

(3) The ATD Plan shall be reviewed at least annually by the program administrator, and by employees regarding the effectiveness of the program in their respective work areas. Deficiencies found shall be corrected. The review(s) shall be documented in writing, in accordance with subsection (j)(3)(A).

(4) The Plan shall be made available to employees, employee representatives, the Chief and NIOSH for examination and copying, in accordance with subsection (j)(4).

(e) Engineering and Work Practice Controls, and Personal Protective Equipment.

(1) General. Employers shall use feasible engineering and work practice controls to minimize employee exposures to ATPs. Where engineering and work practice controls do not provide sufficient protection (e.g., when an employee enters an AII room or area) the employer shall provide, and ensure that employees use, personal protective equipment, and shall provide respiratory protection in accordance with subsection (g) to control exposures to AirIPs.

(A) Work practices shall be implemented to prevent or minimize employee exposures to airborne, droplet, and contact transmission of aerosol transmissible pathogens (ATP), in accordance with Appendix A, and where not addressed by Appendix A, in accordance with the Guideline for Isolation Precautions. Droplet and contact precautions shall be in accordance with Guideline for Isolation Precautions. Airborne precautions shall be in accordance with Guidelines for Preventing the Transmission of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in Health-Care Settings.

NOTE: These work practices may include, but are not limited to; handwashing and gloving procedures; the use of anterooms; and cleaning and disinfecting contaminated surfaces, articles and linens.

(B) Each employer shall implement written source control procedures. For fixed health care and correctional facilities, and in field operations to the extent that it is reasonably practicable, these procedures shall incorporate the recommendations contained in the Respiratory Hygiene/Cough Etiquette in Health Care Settings. The procedures shall include methods to inform individuals entering the facility, being transported by employees, or otherwise in close contact with employees, of the source control practices implemented by the employer.

(C) Employers shall develop and implement engineering and work practice controls to protect employees who operate, use, or maintain vehicles that transport persons who are ATD cases or suspected cases. The employer shall give consideration to implementing barriers and air handling systems, where feasible. Employers shall document the results and the basis for the results of their consideration process. These control measures shall be included in the annual review of the Plan, in accordance with subsection (d)(3).

(2) The employer shall develop and implement effective written decontamination procedures, including appropriate engineering controls, for the cleaning and decontamination of work areas, vehicles, personal protective equipment, and other equipment.

(3) The employer shall provide information about infectious disease hazards to any contractor who provides temporary or contract employees who may be reasonably anticipated to have occupational exposure so that the contractors can institute precautions to protect their employees.

(4) Engineering controls shall be used in workplaces that admit, house, or provide medical services to AirID cases or suspected cases, except in settings where home health care or home-based hospice care is being provided.

(5) AirID cases or suspected cases shall be identified, and except in field operations and in settings where home health care or home-based hospice care is being provided, these individuals shall be:

(A) Provided with disposable tissues and hand hygiene materials and masked or placed in such a manner that contact with employees who are not wearing respiratory protection is eliminated or minimized until transfer or placement in an AII room or area can be accomplished and;

(B) Placed in an AII room or area or transferred to a facility with AII rooms or areas. The employer shall ensure that this placement or transfer is effected in a timely manner.

1. Transfers within facility. Transfers to airborne infection isolation rooms or areas within the facility shall occur within 5 hours of identification. If there is no AII room or area available within this time, the employer shall transfer the individual to another suitable facility in accordance with subsection (e)(5)(B)2.

2. Transfers to other facilities. Transfers to other facilities shall occur within 5 hours of identification, unless the employer documents, at the end of the 5-hour period, and at least every 24 hours thereafter, each of the following:

a. The employer has contacted the local health officer.

b. There is no AII room or area available within that jurisdiction.

c. Reasonable efforts have been made to contact establishments outside of that jurisdiction, as provided in the Plan.

d. All applicable measures recommended by the local health officer or the Infection Control PLHCP have been implemented.

e. All employees who enter the room or area housing the individual are provided with, and use, appropriate personal protective equipment and respiratory protection in accordance with subsection (g) and Section 5144, Respiratory Protection of these orders.

EXCEPTIONS to subsection (e)(5)(B):

(1) Where the treating physician determines that transfer would be detrimental to a patient's condition, the patient need not be transferred. In that case the facility shall ensure that employees use respiratory protection when entering the room or area housing the individual. The patient's condition shall be reviewed at least every 24 hours to determine if transfer is safe, and the determination shall be recorded as described in the Plan in accordance with (d)(2)(G). Once transfer is determined to be safe, transfer must be made within the time period set forth in subsection (e)(5)(B).

(2) Where it is not feasible to provide AII rooms or areas to individuals suspected or confirmed to be infected with or carriers of novel or unknown ATPs, the employer shall provide other effective control measures to reduce the risk of transmission to employees, which shall include the use of respiratory protection in accordance with subsection (g) and Section 5144, Respiratory Protection of these orders.

(C) High-hazard procedures shall be conducted in AII rooms or areas, such as a ventilated booth or tent. Persons not performing the procedures shall be excluded from the area, unless they use the respiratory and personal protective equipment required for employees performing these procedures.

EXCEPTION to subsection (e)(5)(C): Where no AII room or area is available and the treating physician determines that it would be detrimental to the patient's condition to delay performing the procedure, high hazard procedures may be conducted in other areas. In that case, employees working in the room or area where the procedure is performed shall use respiratory protection, in accordance with subsection (g) and Section 5144, Respiratory Protection of these orders, and shall use all necessary personal protective equipment.

(D) Specific requirements for AII rooms and areas.

1. Hospital isolation rooms constructed in conformance with Title 24, California Code of Regulations, Section 417, et seq., and which are maintained to meet those requirements shall be considered to be in compliance with subsection (e)(5)(D)2.

2. Negative pressure shall be maintained in AII rooms or areas. The ventilation rate shall be 12 or more air changes per hour (ACH). The required ventilation rate may be achieved in part by using in-room high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtration or other air cleaning technologies, but in no case shall the outdoor air supply ventilation rate be less than six ACH. Hoods, booths, tents and other local exhaust control measures shall comply with Guidelines for Preventing the Transmission of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in Health-Care Settings.

3. Negative pressure shall be visually demonstrated by smoke trails or equally effective means daily while a room or area is in use for AII.

4. Engineering controls shall be maintained, inspected and performance monitored for exhaust or recirculation filter loading and leakage at least annually, whenever filters are changed, and more often if necessary to maintain effectiveness. Where UVGI is used, it shall be used, maintained, inspected and controlled in accordance with Guidelines for Preventing the Transmission of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in Health-Care Settings. Problems found shall be corrected in a reasonable period of time. If the problem(s) prevent the room from providing effective AII, then the room shall not be used for that purpose until the condition is corrected.

5. Ventilation systems for AII rooms or areas shall be constructed, installed, inspected, operated, tested, and maintained in accordance with Section 5143, General Requirements of Mechanical Ventilation Systems, of these orders. Inspections, testing and maintenance shall be documented in writing, in accordance with subsection (j)(3)(F).

6. Air from AII rooms or areas, and areas that are connected via plenums or other shared air spaces shall be exhausted directly outside, away from intake vents, employees, and the general public. Air that cannot be exhausted in such a manner or that must be recirculated must pass through HEPA filters before discharge or recirculation.

7. Ducts carrying air that may reasonably be anticipated to contain aerosolized *M. tuberculosis* or other AirIP shall be maintained under negative pressure for their entire length before in-duct HEPA filtration or until the ducts exit the building for discharge.

8. Doors and windows of AII rooms or areas shall be kept closed while in use for airborne infection isolation, except when doors are opened for entering or exiting and when windows are part of the ventilation system being used to achieve negative pressure.

9. When a case or suspected case vacates an AII room or area, the room or area shall be ventilated according to Table 1 in the Guidelines for Preventing the Transmission of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in Health-Care Settings for a removal efficiency of 99.9% before permitting employees to enter without respiratory protection.

(f) Laboratories.

(1) This subsection applies to laboratory operations where employees perform procedures capable of aerosolizing ATPs-L.

NOTE: Employers with laboratory operations in which employees have direct contact with cases or suspected cases are also required to comply with applicable portions of subsections (d), (e), (g), (h), (i) and (j).

(2) The biological safety officer shall perform a risk assessment in accordance with the methodology included in Section II of the BMBL for each agent and procedure involving the handling of ATPs-L. The biosafety officer shall record the safe practices required for each evaluated agent/procedure in the Biosafety Plan.

(3) The employer shall implement feasible engineering and work practice controls, in accordance with the risk assessment performed in subsection (f)(2), to minimize employee exposures to ATPs-L. Where exposure still remains after the institution of engineering and work practice controls, the employer shall provide, and ensure that employees use, personal protective equipment and, where necessary to control exposure, respiratory protection. Control measures shall be consistent with the recommendations in BMBL.

(4) Biosafety Plan (BSP). The employer shall establish, implement, and maintain an effective written Biosafety Plan to minimize employee exposures to ATPs-L that may be transmitted by laboratory aerosols. The BSP may be incorporated into an existing Exposure Control Plan for bloodborne pathogens or an ATD Exposure Control Plan as described in subsection (d), and shall do all of the following:

(A) Identify a biological safety officer(s) with the necessary knowledge, authority and responsibility for implementing the BSP.

(B) Include a list of all job classifications in which all or some employees have occupational exposure, and a list of all tasks and procedures in which employees have occupational exposure.

(C) Include a list of ATPs-L known or reasonably expected to be present in laboratory materials and the applicable biosafety measures.

(D) Include a requirement that all incoming materials containing ATPs-L are to be treated as containing the virulent or wild-type pathogen, until procedures have been conducted at the laboratory to verify that a pathogen has been deactivated or attenuated.

(E) Identify and describe the use of engineering controls, including containment equipment and procedures, to be used to minimize exposure to infectious or potentially infectious laboratory aerosols.

(F) Establish safe handling procedures and prohibit practices, such as sniffing *in vitro* cultures, that may increase employee exposure to infectious agents.

(G) Establish effective decontamination and disinfection procedures for laboratory surfaces and equipment.

(H) Identify and describe the use of the appropriate personal protective equipment to be used to minimize exposure to infectious or potentially infectious laboratory aerosols.

(I) Identify any operations or conditions in which respiratory protection will be required. The use of respiratory protection shall be in accordance with subsection (g) and Section 5144 of these orders.

(J) Establish emergency procedures for uncontrolled releases within the laboratory facility and untreated releases outside the laboratory facility. These procedures shall include effective means of reporting such incidents to the local health officer.

(K) Include a medical services program consistent with subsection (h), including the provision of all vaccinations as recommended by applicable public health guidelines for the specific laboratory operations, and the methods for providing investigation and medical follow up for exposure incidents (laboratory).

EXCEPTION to subsection (f)(4)(K): Research and production laboratories in which it is not reasonably anticipated that materials containing *M. Tuberculosis* will be present need not provide surveillance for LTBI.

(L) Include procedures for communication of hazards and employee training that complies with subsection (i). This shall include training in the employer's Biosafety Plan and emergency procedures.

(M) Include an effective procedure for obtaining the active involvement of employees in reviewing and updating the Biosafety Plan with respect to the procedures performed by employees in their respective work areas or departments on an annual (or more frequent) basis.

(N) Include procedures for the biological safety officer(s) to review plans for facility design and construction that will affect the control measures for ATPs-L.

(O) Include procedures for inspection of laboratory facilities, including an audit of biosafety procedures. These inspections shall be performed at least annually. Hazards found during the inspection, and actions taken to correct hazards, shall be recorded.

(5) Recordkeeping shall be in accordance with subsection (j).

(g) Respiratory Protection.

(1) Respirators provided for compliance with this section shall be approved by NIOSH for the purpose for which they are used.

(2) Each employer who has any employee whose occupational exposure is based on entering any of the work settings or performing any of the tasks described in subsection (g)(4) shall establish, implement and maintain an effective written respiratory protection program that meets the requirements of Section 5144 of these orders, except as provided in subsections (g)(5) and (g)(6).

NOTE to subsection (g)(2): The respiratory protection program may be incorporated into the ATD Exposure Control Plan or the Biosafety Plan.

(3) Respirator selection.

(A) Where respirator use is required for protection against potentially infectious aerosols and is not required to meet the requirements of subsections (g)(3)(B) or (g)(3)(C), the employer shall provide a respirator that is at least as effective as an N95 filtering facepiece respirator, unless the employer's evaluation of respiratory hazards determines that a more protective respirator is necessary, in which case the more protective respirator shall be provided.

(B) Effective September 1, 2010, the employer shall provide a powered air purifying respirator (PAPR) with a High Efficiency Particulate Air (HEPA) filter(s), or a respirator providing equivalent or greater protection, to employees who perform high hazard procedures on AirID cases or suspected cases and to employees who perform high hazard procedures on cadavers potentially infected with ATPs, unless the employer determines that this use would interfere with the successful performance of the required task or tasks. This determination shall be documented in accordance with the ATD Plan and shall be reviewed by the employer and employees at least annually in accordance with subsection (d)(3).

EXCEPTION 1 to subsection (g)(3)(B): Where a high hazard procedure is performed by placing the patient in a booth, hood or other ventilated enclosure that effectively contains and removes the aerosols resulting from the procedure, and the employee remains outside of the enclosure, the employee may use a respirator meeting the requirements of subsection (g)(3)(A).

EXCEPTION 2 to subsection (g)(3)(B): Paramedics and other emergency medical personnel in field operations may use a P100, R100 or N100 respirator in lieu of a PAPR, providing that the respirator is used in accordance with its NIOSH approval. If an employer selects N100 respirators for use under this subsection, the employer's respiratory protection program and employee training must address how an environment will be assessed for the presence of oil aerosols and how alternate respiratory protection will be made available to employees who must use respirators under conditions for which N materials are not suitable.

(C) Respirators used in laboratory operations to protect against infectious aerosols shall be selected in accordance with the risk assessment and biosafety plan, in accordance with subsection (f).

(D) Where respirators are necessary to protect the user from other hazards, including the uncontrolled release of microbiological spores, or exposure to chemical or radiologic agents, respirator selection shall also be made in accordance with Sections 5144, Respiratory Protection, and 5192, Hazardous Waste and Emergency Response Operations, of these orders, as applicable.

(4) The employer shall provide, and ensure that employees use, a respirator selected in accordance with subsection (g)(3) and Section 5144 when the employee:

(A) Enters an AII room or area in use for AII;

(B) Is present during the performance of procedures or services for an AirID case or suspected case;

(C) Repairs, replaces, or maintains air systems or equipment that may contain or generate aerosolized pathogens;

(D) Is working in an area occupied by an AirID case or suspected case, during decontamination procedures after the person has left the area and as required by subsection (e)(5)(D)9;

(E) Is working in a residence where an AirID case or suspected case is known to be present;

(F) Is present during the performance of aerosol generating procedures on cadavers that are suspected of, or confirmed as, being infected with aerosol transmissible pathogens;

(G) Is performing a task for which the Biosafety Plan or Exposure Control Plan requires the use of respirators; or

(H) Transports an AirID case or suspected case within the facility or in an enclosed vehicle (e.g., van, car, ambulance or helicopter) when the patient is not masked.

EXCEPTIONS to subsection (g)(4)(H):

(1) The employer shall not require or permit respirator use when an employee is operating a helicopter or other vehicle and the respirator may interfere with the safe operation of that vehicle. When employees do not use respirators, the employer shall provide other means of protection such as barriers or source control measures, where feasible.

(2) Law enforcement or corrections personnel who transport an airborne infectious disease case or suspected case in a vehicle need not use respiratory protection if all of the following conditions are met:

i. A solid partition separates the passenger area from the area where employees are located;

ii. The employer implements written procedures that specify the conditions of operation, including the operation of windows and fans;

iii. The employer tests (for example by the use of smoke tubes) the airflow in a representative vehicle (of the same model, year of manufacture, and partition design) under the specified conditions of operation, and finds that there is no detectable airflow from the passenger compartment to the employee area;

iv. The employer records and maintains the results, in accordance with subsection (j)(3)(F); and

v. The person performing the test is knowledgeable about the assessment of air handling systems.

(5) Medical evaluation: The employer shall provide a medical evaluation, in accordance with Section 5144(e) of these orders, to determine the employee's ability to use a respirator before the employee is fit tested or required to use the respirator. For employees who use respirators solely for compliance with subsections (g)(3)(A) and (g)(3)(B), the alternate questionnaire in Appendix B may be used.

(6) Fit testing.

(A) The employer shall perform either quantitative or qualitative fit tests in accordance with the procedures outlined in Appendix A of Section 5144, Respiratory Protection, of these orders. The fit test shall be performed on the same size, make, model and style of respirator as the employee will use. When quantitative fit testing is performed, the employer shall not permit an employee to wear a filtering facepiece respirator or other half-facepiece respirator, unless a minimum fit factor of one hundred (100) is obtained. When fit testing single use respirators, a new respirator shall be used for each employee.

(B) The employer shall ensure that each employee who is assigned to use a filtering facepiece or other tight-fitting respirator passes a fit test:

1. At the time of initial fitting;

2. When a different size, make, model or style of respirator is used; and

3. At least annually thereafter.

EXCEPTION to subsection (g)(6)(B)3: Until January 1, 2014, employers may increase the interval for repeat fit testing to no more than two years for employees who do not perform high hazard procedures and are not using respirators for protection against laboratory generated aerosols. Employers shall provide to each employee who is not fit-tested within the previous 12 months a respirator fit-test screening that includes the information in Appendix G, and that obtains a response to the questions included in Appendix G. As of January 1, 2015, an employee who uses a respirator under this section shall have been fit-tested within the previous 12 months.

(C) The employer shall conduct an additional fit test when the employee reports, or the employer, PLHCP, supervisor, or program administrator makes visual observations of changes in the employee's physical condition that could affect respirator fit. Such conditions include, but are not limited to, facial scarring, dental changes, cosmetic surgery, or an obvious change in body weight.

(D) If, after passing a fit test, the employee subsequently notifies the employer, program administrator, supervisor, or PLHCP that the fit of the respirator is unacceptable, the employee shall be given a reasonable opportunity to select a different respirator facepiece and to be retested.

(7) The employer shall ensure that each respirator user is provided with initial and annual training in accordance with Section 5144, Respiratory Protection of these orders.

(h) Medical Services.

(1) Each employer who has any employee with occupational exposure shall provide the employee with medical services for tuberculosis and other ATDs, and infection with ATPs and ATPs-L, in accordance with applicable public health guidelines, for the type of work setting and disease. When an employer is also acting as the evaluating health care professional, the employer shall advise the employee following an exposure incident that the employee may refuse to consent to vaccination, post-exposure evaluation and follow-up from the employer-health care professional. When consent is refused, the employer immediately shall make available a confidential vaccination, medical evaluation or follow-up from a PLHCP other than the exposed employee's employer.

(2) Medical services, including vaccinations, tests, examinations, evaluations, determinations, procedures, and medical management and follow-up, shall be:

(A) Performed by or under the supervision of a PLHCP;

(B) Provided according to applicable public health guidelines; and

(C) Provided in a manner that ensures the confidentiality of employees and patients. Test results and other information regarding exposure incidents and TB conversions shall be provided without providing the name of the source individual.

(3) The employer shall make assessment for latent tuberculosis infection (LTBI) available to all employees with occupational exposure. Assessment procedures shall be in accordance with applicable public health guidelines.

(A) TB tests and other forms of TB assessment shall be provided at least annually, and more frequently, if applicable public health guidelines or the local health officer recommends more frequent testing. Employees with baseline positive TB test shall have an annual symptom screen.

(B) The employer shall refer employees who experience a TB conversion to a PLHCP knowledgeable about TB for evaluation.

1. The employer shall provide the PLHCP with a copy of this standard and the employee's TB test records. If the employer has determined the source of the infection, the employer shall also provide any available diagnostic test results including drug susceptibility patterns relating to the source patient.

2. The employer shall request that the PLHCP, with the employee's consent, perform any necessary diagnostic tests and inform the employee about appropriate treatment options.

3. The employer shall request that the PLHCP determine if the employee is a TB case or suspected case, and to do all of the following, if the employee is a case or suspected case:

a. Inform the employee and the local health officer in accordance with Title 17.

b. Consult with the local health officer and inform the employer of any infection control recommendations related to the employee's activity in the workplace.

c. Make a recommendation to the employer regarding precautionary removal due to suspect active disease, in accordance with subsection (h)(8), and provide the employer with a written opinion in accordance with subsection (h)(9).

(C) TB conversions shall be recorded in accordance with California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Section 14300 et seq.

(D) Unless it is determined that the TB test conversion is not occupational, the employer shall investigate the circumstances of the conversion, and correct any deficiencies found during the investigation. The investigation shall be documented in accordance with subsection (j).

EXCEPTION to subsection (h)(3): Research and production laboratories in which *M. tuberculosis* containing materials are not reasonably anticipated to be present, need not provide assessment for LTBI infection.

(4) Laboratory tests shall be conducted by an accredited laboratory.

(5) The employer shall make available to all susceptible health care workers with occupational exposure all vaccine doses listed in Appendix E. Employees in laboratory operations outside of health care settings, and within the scope of subsection (f), shall be provided with vaccines in accordance with the BMBL for the specific laboratory operations. The requirements in subsection (h)(5) will become effective on September 1, 2010.

(A) Recommended vaccinations shall be made available to all employees who have occupational exposure after the employee has received the training required in subsection (c) or (i) and within 10 working days of initial assignment unless:

1. The employee has previously received the recommended vaccination(s) and is not due to receive another vaccination dose; or

2. A PLHCP has determined that the employee is immune in accordance with applicable public health guidelines; or

3. The vaccine(s) is contraindicated for medical reasons.

(B) The employer shall make additional vaccine doses available to employees within 120 days of the issuance of new applicable public health guidelines recommending the additional dose.

(C) The employer shall not make participation in a prescreening serology program a prerequisite for receiving a vaccine, unless applicable public health guidelines recommend this prescreening prior to administration of the vaccine.

(D) If the employee initially declines a vaccination but at a later date, while still covered under the standard, decides to accept the vaccination, the employer shall make the vaccination available in accordance with subsection (h)(5)(A) within 10 working days of receiving a written request from the employee.

(E) The employer shall ensure that employees who decline to accept a recommended and offered vaccination sign the statement in Appendix C1 for each declined vaccine.

(F) The employer shall request the PLHCP administering a vaccination or determining immunity to provide only the following information to the employer:

1. The employee's name and employee identifier.

2. The date of the vaccine dose or determination of immunity.

3. Whether the employee is immune to the disease, and whether there are any specific restrictions on the employee's exposure or ability to receive vaccine.

4. Whether an additional vaccination dose is required, and if so, the date the additional vaccination dose should be provided.

EXCEPTION to subsection (h)(5): Where the employer cannot implement these procedures because of the lack of availability of vaccine, the employer shall document efforts made to obtain the vaccine in a timely manner and inform employees of the status of the vaccine availability, including when the vaccine is likely to become available. The employer shall check on the availability of the vaccine at least every 60 calendar days and inform employees when the vaccine becomes available.

(6) Exposure Incidents.

(A) A health care provider, or the employer of a health care provider who determines that a person is an RATD case or suspected case shall report, or ensure that the health care provider reports, the case to the local health officer, in accordance with Title 17.

(B) In addition to the report required in subsection (h)(6)(A), the employer in the facility, service or operation that originates the report shall determine, to the extent that the information is available in the employer's records, whether the employee(s) of any other employer(s) may have had contact with the case or suspected case while performing activities within the scope of this section. The employer shall notify the other employer(s) within a timeframe that will both provide reasonable assurance that there will be adequate time for the employee to receive effective medical intervention to prevent disease or mitigate the disease course, and will also permit the prompt initiation of an investigation to identify exposed employees. In no case, shall the notification be longer than 72 hours after the report to the local health officer. The notification shall include the date, time, and nature of the potential exposure, and provide any other information that is necessary for the other employer(s) to evaluate the potential exposure of his or her employees. The notifying employer shall not provide the identity of the source patient to the other employers.

NOTE 1 to subsection (h)(6)(B): These employees may include, but are not limited to, paramedics, emergency medical technicians, emergency responders, home health care personnel, homeless shelter personnel, personnel at referring health care facilities or agencies, and corrections personnel.

NOTE 2 to subsection (h)(6)(B): Some diseases, such as meningococcal disease, require prompt prophylaxis of exposed individuals to prevent disease. Some diseases, such as varicella, have a limited window in which to administer vaccine to non-immune contacts. Exposure to some diseases may create a need to temporarily remove an employee from certain duties during a potential period of communicability. For other diseases such as tuberculosis there may not be a need for immediate medical intervention, however prompt follow up is important to the success of identifying exposed employees.

(C) Each employer who becomes aware that his or her employees may have been exposed to an RATD case or suspected case, or to an exposure incident involving an ATP-L shall do all of the following:

1. Within a timeframe that is reasonable for the specific disease, as described in subsection (h)(6)(B), but in no case later than 72 hours following, as applicable, the employer's report to the local health officer or the receipt of notification from another employer or the local health officer, conduct an analysis of the exposure scenario to determine which employees had significant exposures. This analysis shall be conducted by an individual knowledgeable in the mechanisms of exposure to ATPs or ATPs-L, and shall record the names and any other employee identifier used in the workplace of persons who were included in the analysis. The analysis shall also record the basis for any determination that an employee need not be included in post-exposure follow-up because the employee did not have a significant exposure or because a PLHCP determined that the employee is immune to the infection in accordance with applicable public health guidelines. The exposure analysis shall be made available to the local health officer upon request. The name of the person making the determination, and the identity of any PLHCP or local health officer consulted in making the determination shall be recorded.

2. Within a timeframe that is reasonable for the specific disease, as described in subsection (h)(6)(B), but in no case later than 96 hours of becoming aware of the potential exposure, notify employees who had significant exposures of the date, time, and nature of the exposure.

3. As soon as feasible, provide post-exposure medical evaluation to all employees who had a significant exposure. The evaluation shall be conducted by a PLHCP knowledgeable about the specific disease, including appropriate vaccination, prophylaxis and treatment. For *M. tuberculosis*, and for other pathogens where recommended by applicable public health guidelines, this shall include testing of the isolate from the source individual or material for drug susceptibility, unless the PLHCP determines that it is not feasible.

4. Obtain from the PLHCP a recommendation regarding precautionary removal in accordance with subsection (h)(8), and a written opinion in accordance with subsection (h)(9).

5. Determine, to the extent that the information is available in the employer's records, whether employees of any other employers may have been exposed to the case or material. The employer shall notify these other employers within a time frame that is reasonable for the specific disease, as described in subsection (h)(6)(B), but in no case later than 72 hours of becoming aware of the exposure incident of the nature, date, and time of the exposure, and shall provide the contact information for the diagnosing PLHCP. The notifying employer shall not provide the identity of the source patient to other employers.

(7) Information provided to the Physician or Other Licensed Health Care Professional.

(A) Each employer shall ensure that all PLHCPs responsible for making determinations and performing procedures as part of the medical services program are provided a copy of this standard and applicable public health guidelines. For respirator medical evaluations, the employer shall provide information regarding the type of respiratory protection used, a description of the work effort required, any special environmental conditions that exist (e.g., heat, confined space entry), additional requirements for protective clothing and equipment, and the duration and frequency of respirator use.

(B) Each employer shall ensure that the PLHCP who evaluates an employee after an exposure incident is provided the following information:

1. A description of the exposed employee's duties as they relate to the exposure incident;

2. The circumstances under which the exposure incident occurred;

3. Any available diagnostic test results, including drug susceptibility pattern or other information relating to the source of exposure that could assist in the medical management of the employee; and

4. All of the employer's medical records for the employee that are relevant to the management of the employee, including tuberculin skin test results and other relevant tests for ATP infections, vaccination status, and determinations of immunity.

(8) Precautionary removal recommendation from the physician or other licensed health care professional.

(A) Each employer who provides a post-exposure evaluation in accordance with this Section, or an evaluation of an employee's TB conversion in accordance with subsection (h)(3) shall request from the PLHCP an opinion regarding whether precautionary removal from the employee's regular assignment is necessary to prevent spread of the disease agent by the employee and what type of alternate work assignment may be provided. The employer shall request that the PLHCP convey to the employer any recommendation for precautionary removal immediately via phone or fax and that the PLHCP document the recommendation in the written opinion as required in subsection (h)(9).

(B) Where the PLHCP recommends precautionary removal, or where the local health officer recommends precautionary removal, the employer shall maintain until the employee is determined to be noninfectious, the employee's earnings, seniority, and all other employee rights and benefits, including the employee's right to his or her former job status, as if the employee had not been removed from his or her job or otherwise medically limited.

EXCEPTION to subsection (h)(8)(B): Precautionary removal provisions do not extend to any period of time during which the employee is unable to work for reasons other than precautionary removal.

(9) Written opinion from the physician or other licensed health care professional.

(A) Each employer shall obtain, and provide the employee with a copy of, the written opinion of the PLHCP within 15 working days of the completion of all medical evaluations required by this section.

(B) For respirator use, the physician's opinion shall have the content required by Section 5144(e)(6) of these orders.

(C) For TB conversions and all RATD and ATP-L exposure incidents, the written opinion shall be limited to the following information:

1. The employee's TB test status or applicable RATD test status for the exposure of concern;

2. The employee's infectivity status;

3. A statement that the employee has been informed of the results of the medical evaluation and has been offered any applicable vaccinations, prophylaxis, or treatment;

4. A statement that the employee has been told about any medical conditions resulting from exposure to TB, other RATD, or ATP-L that require further evaluation or treatment and that the employee has been informed of treatment options; and

5. Any recommendations for precautionary removal from the employee's regular assignment.

(D) All other findings or diagnoses shall remain confidential and shall not be included in the written report.

(10) The employer shall make available seasonal influenza vaccine to all employees with occupational exposure. The employer shall ensure that each employee who declines to accept the seasonal influenza vaccine signs the statement in Appendix C2.

EXCEPTION 1 to subsection (h)(10): Seasonal influenza vaccine shall be provided during the period designated by the CDC for administration, and need not be provided outside of those periods.

EXCEPTION 2 to subsection (h)(10): In lieu of the statement in Appendix C2, the employer may utilize an influenza vaccine declination statement acceptable to the CDPH in accordance with Health and Safety Code Section 1288.7.

(i) Training.

(1) Employers shall ensure that all employees with occupational exposure participate in a training program.

(2) Employers shall provide training as follows:

(A) At the time of initial assignment to tasks where occupational exposure may take place;

(B) At least annually thereafter, not to exceed 12 months from the previous training;

(C) For employees who have received training on aerosol transmissible diseases in the year preceding the effective date of the standard, only training with respect to the provisions of the standard that were not included previously need to be provided.

(D) When changes, such as introduction of new engineering or work practice controls, modification of tasks or procedures or institution of new tasks or procedures, affect the employee's occupational exposure or control measures. The additional training may be limited to addressing the new exposures or control measures.

(3) Training material appropriate in content and vocabulary to the educational level, literacy, and language of employees shall be used.

(4) The training program shall contain at a minimum the following elements:

(A) An accessible copy of the regulatory text of this standard and an explanation of its contents.

(B) A general explanation of ATDs including the signs and symptoms of ATDs that require further medical evaluation.

(C) An explanation of the modes of transmission of ATPs or ATPs-L and applicable source control procedures.

(D) An explanation of the employer's ATD Exposure Control Plan and/or Biosafety Plan, and the means by which the employee can obtain a copy of the written plan and how they can provide input as to its effectiveness.

(E) An explanation of the appropriate methods for recognizing tasks and other activities that may expose the employee to ATPs or ATPs-L.

(F) An explanation of the use and limitations of methods that will prevent or reduce exposure to ATPs or ATPs-L including appropriate engineering and work practice controls, decontamination and disinfection procedures, and personal and respiratory protective equipment.

(G) An explanation of the basis for selection of personal protective equipment, its uses and limitations, and the types, proper use, location, removal, handling, cleaning, decontamination and disposal of the items of personal protective equipment employees will use.

(H) A description of the employer's TB surveillance procedures, including the information that persons who are immune-compromised may have a false negative test for LTBI.

EXCEPTION: Research and production laboratories do not need to include training on surveillance for LTBI if *M. tuberculosis* containing materials are not reasonably anticipated to be present in the laboratory.

(I) Training meeting the requirements of Section 5144(k) of these orders for employees whose assignment includes the use of a respirator.

(J) Information on the vaccines made available by the employer, including information on their efficacy, safety, method of administration, the benefits of being vaccinated, and that the vaccine and vaccination will be offered free of charge.

(K) An explanation of the procedure to follow if an exposure incident occurs, including the method of reporting the incident, the medical follow-up that will be made available, and post-exposure evaluation.

(L) Information on the employer's surge plan as it pertains to the duties that employees will perform. As applicable, this training shall cover the plan for surge receiving and treatment of patients, patient isolation procedures, surge procedures for handling of specimens, including specimens from persons who may have been contaminated as the result of a release of a biological agent, how to access supplies needed for the response including personal protective equipment and respirators, decontamination facilities and procedures, and how to coordinate with emergency response personnel from other agencies.

(5) Every training program shall include an opportunity for interactive questions and answers with a person who is knowledgeable in the subject matter of the training as it relates to the workplace that the training addresses and who is also knowledgeable in the employer's ATD exposure control or biosafety plan. Training not given in person shall fulfill all the subject matter requirements of subsections (i)(4) and shall provide for interactive questions to be answered within 24 hours by a knowledgeable person as described above.

(j) Recordkeeping.

(1) Medical records.

(A) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate medical record for each employee with occupational exposure, in accordance with Section 3204, Access to Employee Exposure and Medical Records, of these orders.

NOTE to subsection (j)(1)(A): This record may be combined with the medical record required by Section 5193, Bloodborne Pathogens, of these orders, but may not be combined with non-medical personnel records.

(B) This record shall include:

1. The employee's name and any other employee identifier used in the workplace;

2. The employee's vaccination status for all vaccines required by this standard, including the information provided by the PLHCP in accordance with subsection (h)(5)(F), any vaccine record provided by the employee, and any signed declination forms;

EXCEPTION to subsection (j)(1)(B)2.: As to seasonal influenza vaccine, the medical record need only contain a declination form for the most recent seasonal influenza vaccine.

3. A copy of all written opinions provided by a PLHCP in accordance with this standard, and the results of all TB assessments; and

4. A copy of the information regarding an exposure incident that was provided to the PLHCP as required by subsection (h)(7)(B).

(C) Confidentiality. The employer shall ensure that all employee medical records required by this section are:

1. Kept confidential; and

2. Not disclosed or reported without the employee's express written consent to any person within or outside the workplace except as permitted by this section or as may be required by law.

NOTE to subsection (j)(1)(C): These provisions do not apply to records that do not contain individually identifiable medical information, or from which individually identifiable medical information has been removed.

(D) The employer shall maintain the medical records required by this section for at least the duration of employment plus 30 years in accordance with Section 3204, Access to Employee Exposure and Medical Records, of these orders.

(2) Training records.

(A) Training records shall include the following information:

1. The date(s) of the training session(s);

2. The contents or a summary of the training session(s);

3. The names and qualifications of persons conducting the training or who are designated to respond to interactive questions; and

4. The names and job titles of all persons attending the training sessions.

(B) Training records shall be maintained for 3 years from the date on which the training occurred.

(3) Records of implementation of ATD Plan and/or Biosafety Plan.

(A) Records of annual review of the ATD Plan and Biosafety Plan shall include the name(s) of the person conducting the review, the dates the review was conducted and completed, the name(s) and work area(s) of employees involved, and a summary of the conclusions. The record shall be retained for three years.

(B) Records of exposure incidents shall be retained and made available as employee exposure records in accordance with Section 3204. These records shall include:

1. The date of the exposure incident;

2. The names, and any other employee identifiers used in the workplace, of employees who were included in the exposure evaluation;

3. The disease or pathogen to which employees may have been exposed;

4. The name and job title of the person performing the evaluation;

5. The identity of any local health officer and/or PLHCP consulted;

6. The date of the evaluation; and

7. The date of contact and contact information for any other employer who either notified the employer or was notified by the employer regarding potential employee exposure.

(C) Records of the unavailability of vaccine shall include the name of the person who determined that the vaccine was not available, the name and affiliation of the person providing the vaccine availability information, and the date of the contact. This record shall be retained for three years.

(D) Records of the unavailability of AII rooms or areas shall include the name of the person who determined that an AII room or area was not available, the names and the affiliation of persons contacted for transfer possibilities, and the date of the contact, the name and contact information for the local health officer providing assistance, and the times and dates of these contacts. This record, which shall not contain a patient's individually identifiable medical information, shall be retained for three years.

(E) Records of decisions not to transfer a patient to another facility for AII for medical reasons shall be documented in the patient's chart, and a summary shall be provided to the Plan administrator providing only the name of the physician determining that the patient was not able to be transferred, the date and time of the initial decision and the date, time and identity of the person(s) who performed each daily review. The summary record, which shall not contain a patient's individually identifiable medical information, shall be retained for three years.

(F) Records of inspection, testing and maintenance of non-disposable engineering controls including ventilation and other air handling systems, air filtration systems, containment equipment, biological safety cabinets, and waste treatment systems shall be maintained for a minimum of five years and shall include the name(s) and affiliation(s) of the person(s) performing the test, inspection or maintenance, the date, and any significant findings and actions that were taken.

(G) Records of the respiratory protection program shall be established and maintained in accordance with Section 5144, Respiratory Protection, of these orders. Employers who provide fit-test screening, in accordance with the exception to subsection (g)(6)(B)3 shall retain the screening record for two years.

(4) Availability.

(A) The employer shall ensure that all records, other than the employee medical records more specifically dealt with in subsection (j)(4)(C), required to be maintained by this section shall be made available upon request to the Chief and NIOSH and the local health officer for examination and copying.

(B) Employee training records, the exposure control plan and/or biosafety plan, and records of implementation of the ATD exposure control plan and biosafety plan, other than medical records containing individually identifiable medical information, shall be made available as employee exposure records in accordance with Section 3204(e)(1) to employees and employee representatives.

(C) Employee medical records required by this subsection shall be provided upon request to the subject employee, anyone having the written consent of the subject employee, the local health officer, and to the Chief and NIOSH in accordance with Section 3204 of these orders, Access to Employee Exposure and Medical Records, for examination and copying.

(5) Transfer of Records.

(A) The employer shall comply with the requirements involving the transfer of employee medical and exposure records that are set forth in Section 3204, Access to Employee Exposure and Medical Records, of these orders.

(B) If the employer ceases to do business and there is no successor employer to receive and retain the records for the prescribed period, the employer shall notify the Chief and NIOSH, at least three months prior to the disposal of the records and shall transmit them to NIOSH, if required by NIOSH to do so, within that three-month period.

Note: Authority cited: Sections 142.3 and 6308, Labor Code. Reference: Sections 142.3 and 6308, Labor Code; and 8 CCR 332.3.

APPENDIX

Appendix A
Appendix B
Appendix C1
Appendix C2
Appendix D
Appendix E
Appendix F
Appendix G

HISTORY

1. New section filed 7-6-2009; operative 8-5-2009 (Register 2009, No. 28). For prior history, see Register 87, No. 51.

2. Amendment of subsection (g)(3)(B) - EXCEPTION 2 filed 8-1-2013; operative 10-1-2013 (Register 2013, No. 31).

Go Back to Article 109 Table of Contents

This information is provided free of charge by the Department of Industrial Relations from its web site at www.dir.ca.gov. These regulations are for the convenience of the user and no representation or warranty is made that the information is current or accurate. See full disclaimer at https://www.dir.ca.gov/od_pub/disclaimer.html.

Return to index
New query

---

§6151. Portable Fire Extinguishers.

(a) Scope and Application. The requirements of this Section apply to the placement, use, maintenance, and testing of portable fire extinguishers provided for the use of employees. Section (d) of this section does not apply to extinguishers provided for employee use on the outside of workplace buildings or structures. Where extinguishers are provided but are not intended for employee use and the employer has an emergency action plan and a fire prevention plan which meet the requirements of Sections 3220 and 3221 then only the requirements of Sections (e) and (f) of this Section apply.

(b) Exemptions.

(1) Where the employer has established and implemented a written fire safety policy which requires the immediate and total evacuation of employees from the workplace upon the sounding of a fire alarm signal and which includes an emergency action plan and a fire prevention plan which meet the requirements of Sections 3220 and 3221 and when extinguishers are not available in the workplace, the employer is exempt from all requirements of this section unless a specific Section in Title 8 requires that a portable fire extinguisher be provided.

(2) Where the employer has an emergency action plan meeting the requirements of Section 3220 which designates certain employees to be the only employees authorized to use the available portable fire extinguishers, and which requires all other employees in the fire area to immediately evacuate the affected work area upon the sounding of the fire alarm, the employer is exempt from the distribution requirements in Section (d) of this Section.

(c) General Requirements.

(1) The employer shall provide portable fire extinguishers and shall mount, locate and identify them so that they are readily accessible to employees without subjecting the employees to possible injury.

(2) Only approved portable fire extinguishers shall be used to meet the requirements of this section.

(3) The employer shall not provide or make available in the workplace portable fire extinguishers using carbon tetrachloride or chlorobromomethane extinguishing agents.

(4) The employer shall assure that portable fire extinguishers are maintained in a fully charged and operable condition and kept in their designated places at all times except during use.

(5) The employer shall permanently remove from service by January 1, 1982, all soldered or riveted shell self-generating soda acid or self-generating foam or gas cartridge water type portable fire extinguishers which are operated by inverting the extinguisher to rupture the cartridge or to initiate an uncontrollable pressure generating chemical reaction to expel the agent.

(d) Selection and Distribution.

(1) Where portable fire extinguishers are provided for employee use, they shall be selected and distributed based on the classes of anticipated work place fires and on the size and degree of hazard which would affect their use.

(2) The employer shall distribute portable fire extinguishers for use by employees on Class A fires so that the travel distance for employees to any extinguisher is 75 feet (22.9m) or less.

(3) The employer may use uniformly spaced standpipe systems or hose stations connected to a sprinkler system installed for emergency use by employees instead of Class A portable fire extinguishers, provided that such systems meet the respective requirements of Articles 158 or 159, that they provide total coverage of the area to be protected, and that employees are trained at least annually in their use.

(4) The employer shall distribute portable fire extinguishers for use by employees on Class B fires so that the travel distance from the Class B hazard area to any extinguisher is 50 feet (15.2m) or less.

(5) The employer shall distribute portable fire extinguishers used for Class C hazards on the basis of the appropriate pattern for the existing Class A or Class B hazards.

(6) The employer shall distribute portable fire extinguishers or other containers of Class D extinguishing agent for use by employees so that the travel distance from the combustible metal working area to any extinguishing agent is 75 feet (22.9m) or less. Portable fire extinguishers for Class D hazards are required in those combustible metal working areas where combustible metal powders, flakes, shavings, or similarly sized products are generated a least once every two weeks.

(e) Inspection, Maintenance and Testing.

(1) The employer shall be responsible for the inspection, maintenance and testing of all portable fire extinguishers in the workplace.

(2) Portable extinguishers or hose used in lieu thereof under Subsection (d)(3) of this Section shall be visually inspected monthly.

(3) Portable fire extinguishers shall be subjected to an annual maintenance check. Stored pressure extinguishers do not require an internal examination. The employer shall record the annual maintenance date and retain this record for one year after the last entry or the life of the shell, whichever is less. The record shall be available to the Chief upon request.

(4) Stored pressure dry chemical extinguishers that require a 12-year hydrostatic test shall be emptied and subjected to applicable maintenance procedures every 6 years. Dry chemical extinguishers having non-refillable disposable containers are exempt from this requirement. When recharging or hydrostatic testing is performed, the 6-year requirement begins from that date.

(5) Alternate equivalent protection shall be provided when portable fire extinguishers are removed from service for maintenance and recharging.

(f) Hydrostatic Testing.

(1) The employer shall assure that hydrostatic testing is performed by trained persons with suitable testing equipment and facilities.

(2) The employer shall assure that portable extinguishers are hydrostatically tested at the intervals listed in Table L-1 of this Section, except under any of the following conditions:

(A) when the unit has been repaired by soldering, welding, brazing, or use of patching compounds;

(B) when the cylinder or shell threads are damaged;

(C) when there is corrosion that has caused pitting, including corrosion under removable name plate assemblies;

(D) when the extinguisher has been burned in a fire; or

(E) when a calcium chloride extinguishing agent has been used in a stainless steel shell.

Table L-1

Type of Extinguishers	**Test Interval (years)**
Soda acid (soldered brass shells) (until 1/1/82)	[FN1]
Soda acid (stainless steel shell)	5
Cartridge operated water and/or antifreeze	5
Stored pressure water and/or antifreeze	5
Wetting agent	5
Foam (soldered brass shells) (until 1/1/82)	[FN1]
Foam (stainless steel shell)	5
Aqueous Film Forming Foam (AFFF)	5
Loaded stream	5
Dry chemical with stainless steel	5
Carbon dioxide	5
Dry chemical, stored pressure, with mild steel,	
brazed brass or aluminum shells	12
Dry chemical, cartridge or cylinder operated, with mild steel shells	12
Halon 1211	12
Halon 1301	12
Dry powder, cartridge or cylinder operated with mild steel shells	12

[FN1] Extinguishers having shells constructed of copper or brass joined by soft solder or rivets shall not be hydrostatially tested and shall be removed from service by January 1, 1982 (Not permitted).

(3) In addition to an external visual examination, the employer shall assure that an internal examination of cylinders and shells to be tested is made prior to the hydrostatic tests.

(4) The employer shall assure that portable fire extinguishers are hydrostatically tested whenever they show new evidence of corrosion or mechanical injury, except under the conditions listed in subsection (f)(2)(A)-(E) of this Section.

(5) The employer shall assure that hydrostatic tests are performed on extinguisher hose assemblies which are equipped with a shut-off nozzle at the discharge end of the hose. The test interval shall be the same as specified for the extinguisher on which the hose is installed.

(6) The employer shall assure that carbon dioxide hose assemblies with a shut-off nozzle are hydrostatically tested at 1,250 psi (8,620 kPa).

(7) The employer shall assure that dry chemical and dry powder hose assemblies with a shut-off nozzle are hydrostatically tested at 300 psi (2,070 kPa).

(8) Hose assemblies passing a hydrostatic test do not require any type of recording or stamping.

(9) The employer shall assure that hose assemblies for carbon dioxide extinguishers that require a hydrostatic test are tested within a protective cage device.

(10) The employer shall assure that carbon dioxide extinguishers and nitrogen or carbon dioxide cylinders used with wheeled extinguishers are tested every 5 years at 5/3 of the service pressure as stamped into the cylinder. Nitrogen cylinders which comply with 49 CFR 173.34(e)(15) may be hydrostatically tested every 10 years.

(11) The employer shall assure that all stored pressure and Halon 1211 types of extinguishers are hydrostatically tested at the factory test pressure not to exceed two times the service pressure.

(12) The employer shall assure that acceptable self-generating type soda acid and foam extinguishers are tested at 350 psi (2,410 kPa).

(13) Air or gas pressure may not be used for hydrostatic testing.

(14) Extinguishers shells, cylinders, or cartridges which fail a hydrostatic pressure test, or which are not fit for testing shall be removed from service and from the workplace.

(15) The equipment for testing compressed gas type cylinders shall be of the water jacket type. The equipment shall be provided with an expansion indicator which operates with an accuracy within one percent of the total expansion or 0.1cc of liquid.

(A) The equipment for testing non-compressed gas type cylinders shall consist of the following:

1. A hydrostatic test pump, hand or power operated, capable of producing not less than 150 percent of the test pressure, which shall include appropriate check valves and fittings;

2. A flexible connection for attachment to fittings to test through the extinguisher nozzle, test bonnet, or hose outlet, as is applicable; and

3. A protective cage or barrier for personal protection of the tester, designed to provide visual observation of the extinguisher under test.

(16) The employer shall maintain and provide upon request to the Chief of Division evidence that the required hydrostatic testing of fire extinguishers has been performed at the time intervals shown in Table L-1. Such evidence shall be in the form of a certification record which includes the date of the test, the signature of the person who performed the test and the serial number, or the other identifier, of the fire extinguisher that was tested. Such records shall be kept until the extinguisher is hydrostatically retested at the time interval specified in Table L-1 or until the extinguisher is taken out of service.

(g) Training and Education.

(1) Where the employer has provided portable fire extinguishers for employee use in the workplace, the employer shall also provide an educational program to familiarize employees with the general principles of fire extinguisher use and the hazards involved with incipient stage fire fighting.

(2) The employer shall provide the education required in subsection (g)(1) of this Section upon initial employment and at least annually thereafter.

(3) The employer shall provide employees who have been designated to use fire fighting equipment as part of an emergency action plan with training in the use of the appropriate equipment.

(4) The employer shall provide the training required in subsection (g)(3) of this Section upon initial assignment to the designated group of employees and at least annually thereafter.

Note: Authority cited: Section 142.3, Labor Code. Reference: Section 142.3, Labor Code.

HISTORY

1. Repealer of Article 157 (Sections 6151-6161) and new Article 157 (Section 6151) filed 9-8-81; effective thirtieth day thereafter (Register 81, No. 37). For prior history, see Registers 81, No. 4; 79, No. 1; and 75, No. 46.

2. Editorial correction of subsections (d) and (e) filed 6-30-82 (Register 82, No. 27).

3. Amendment of subsection (f)(16) filed 5-6-87; operative 6-5-87 (Register 87, No. 19).

Go Back to Article 157 Table of Contents

Workplace Violence Prevention - 6401.9

LABOR CODE - LAB - DIVISION 5. SAFETY IN EMPLOYMENT [6300 - 9254] (Division 5 enacted by Stats. 1937, Ch. 90.) - PART 1. OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH [6300 - 6725] (Heading of Part 1 amended by Stats. 1973, Ch. 993.) - CHAPTER 3. Responsibilities and Duties of Employers and Employees [6400 - 6413.5] (Chapter 3 repealed and added by Stats. 1973, Ch. 993.)

(a) **For purposes of this section, the following definitions apply:**

(1) **“Emergency”** means unanticipated circumstances that can be life threatening or pose a risk of significant injuries to employees or other persons.

(2) **“Engineering controls”** mean an aspect of the built space or a device that removes a hazard from the workplace or creates a barrier between the worker and the hazard.

(3) **“Log”** means the violent incident log required by this section.

(4) **“Plan”** means the workplace violence prevention plan required by this section.

(5) **“Threat of violence”** means any verbal or written statement, including, but not limited to, texts, electronic messages, social media messages, or other online posts, or any behavioral or physical conduct, that conveys an intent, or that is reasonably perceived to convey an intent, to cause physical harm or to place someone in fear of physical harm, and that serves no legitimate purpose.

(6) (A) **“Workplace violence”** means any act of violence or threat of violence that occurs in a place of employment.

(B) “Workplace violence” includes, but is not limited to, the following:

(i) The threat or use of physical force against an employee that results in, or has a high likelihood of resulting in, injury, psychological trauma, or stress, regardless of whether the employee sustains an injury.

(ii) An incident involving a threat or use of a firearm or other dangerous weapon, including the use of common objects as weapons, regardless of whether the employee sustains an injury.

(iii) The following four workplace violence types:
(I) **“Type 1 violence,”** which means workplace violence committed by a person who has no legitimate business at the worksite, and includes violent acts by anyone who enters the workplace or approaches workers with the intent to commit a crime.
(II) **“Type 2 violence,”** which means workplace violence directed at employees by customers, clients, patients, students, inmates, or visitors.
(III) **“Type 3 violence,”** which means workplace violence against an employee by a present or former employee, supervisor, or manager.
(IV) **“Type 4 violence,”** which means workplace violence committed in the workplace by a person who does not work there, but has or is known to have had a personal relationship with an employee.

(C) “Workplace violence” does not include lawful acts of self-defense or defense of others.

(7) **“Work practice controls”** means procedures and rules which are used to effectively reduce workplace violence hazards.

(b) (1) **Except as provided in paragraph (2), this section applies to all employers, employees, places of employment, and employer-provided housing.**

(2) Subject to paragraph (3), **the following employers, employees, and places of employment are exempt from this section:**

(A) Health care facilities, service categories, and operations covered by Section 3342 of Title 8 of the California Code of Regulations.[1]

Note that as stated in the footnote below, Section 3342 essentially applies to healthcare facilities where patients stay for at least 24-hours. Consequently, this current document (6401.9) applies to conventional outpatient medical and dental practices.

(B) Employers that comply with Section 3342 of Title 8 of the California Code of Regulations.
(C) Facilities operated by the Department of Corrections and Rehabilitation, if the facilities are in compliance with Section 3203 of Title 8 of the California Code of Regulations.
(D) Employers that are law enforcement agencies that are a “department or participating department,” as defined in Section 1001 of Title 11 of the California Code of Regulations and that have received confirmation of compliance with the Commission on Peace Officer Standards and Training (POST) Program from the POST Executive Director in accordance with Section 1010 of Title 11 of the California Code of Regulations. However, an employer shall be exempt pursuant to this subparagraph only if all facilities operated by the agency are in compliance with Section 3203 of Title 8 of the California Code of Regulations.
(E) Employees teleworking from a location of the employee’s choice, which is not under the control of the employer.
(F) Places of employment where there are less than 10 employees working at the place at any given time and that are not accessible to the public, if the places are in compliance with Section 3203 of Title 8 of the California Code of Regulations.

(3) Notwithstanding paragraph (1), the division may, by issuance of an order to take special action, require an employer that is exempt pursuant to paragraph (1) to comply with this section or require an employer to include employees or places of employment that are exempt pursuant to paragraph (1) in their compliance with this section.

---

[1] § 3342. Violence Prevention in Health Care specifies:
“Health facility” means any facility, place, or building that is organized, maintained, and operated for the diagnosis, care, prevention, or treatment of human illness, physical or mental, including convalescence and rehabilitation and including care during and after pregnancy, or for any one or more of these purposes, for one or more persons, to which **the persons are admitted for a 24-hour stay or longer.** (Ref: Health and Safety Code Section 1250). For the purposes of this section, a health facility includes hospital based outpatient clinics (HBOCs) and other operations located at a health facility, and all off-site operations included within the license of the health facility. The term “health facility” includes facilities with the following bed classifications, as established by the California Department of Public Health:
(1) General acute care hospital
(2) Acute psychiatric hospital
(3) Skilled nursing facility
(4) Intermediate care facility
(5) Intermediate care facility/developmentally disabled habilitative
(6) Special hospital
(7) Intermediate care facility/developmentally disabled
(8) Intermediate care facility/developmentally disabled-nursing
(9) Congregate living health facility
(10) Correctional treatment center
(11) Nursing facility
(12) Intermediate care facility/developmentally disabled-continuous nursing (ICF/DD-CN)
(13) Hospice facility

(c) (1) (A) **An employer shall establish, implement, and maintain an effective workplace violence prevention plan.**

(B) The plan shall be in writing and shall be available and easily accessible to employees, authorized employee representatives, and representatives of the division at all times. The plan shall be in effect at all times and in all work areas and be specific to the hazards and corrective measures for each work area and operation. The written plan may be incorporated as a stand-alone section in the written injury and illness prevention program required by Section 3203 of Title 8 of the California Code of Regulations or maintained as a separate document.
(2) The plan shall include all of the following:
(A) Names or job titles of the persons responsible for implementing the plan. If there are multiple persons responsible for the plan, their roles shall be clearly described.

(B) Effective procedures to obtain the active involvement of employees and authorized employee representatives in developing and implementing the plan, including, but not limited to, through their participation in identifying, evaluating, and correcting workplace violence hazards, in designing and implementing training, and in reporting and investigating workplace violence incidents.
(C) Methods the employer will use to coordinate implementation of the plan with other employers, when applicable, to ensure that those employers and employees understand their respective roles, as provided in the plan. These methods shall ensure that all employees are provided the training required by subdivision (e) and that workplace violence incidents involving any employee are reported, investigated, and recorded.
(D) Effective procedures for the employer to accept and respond to reports of workplace violence, and to prohibit retaliation against an employee who makes such a report.
(E) Effective procedures to ensure that supervisory and nonsupervisory employees comply with the plan in a manner consistent with paragraph (2) of subdivision (a) of Section 3203 of Title 8 of the California Code of Regulations.
(F) Effective procedures to communicate with employees regarding workplace violence matters, including, but not limited to, both of the following:
(i) How an employee can report a violent incident, threat, or other workplace violence concern to the employer or law enforcement without fear of reprisal.
(ii) How employee concerns will be investigated as part of the employer's responsibility in complying with subparagraph (I), and how employees will be informed of the results of the investigation and any corrective actions to be taken as part of the employer's responsibility in complying with subparagraph (J).
(G) Effective procedures to respond to actual or potential workplace violence emergencies, including, but not limited to, all of the following:
(i) Effective means to alert employees of the presence, location, and nature of workplace violence emergencies.
(ii) Evacuation or sheltering plans that are appropriate and feasible for the worksite.
(iii) How to obtain help from staff assigned to respond to workplace violence emergencies, if any, security personnel, if any, and law enforcement.
(H) Procedures to develop and provide the training required in subdivision (e).
(I) Procedures to identify and evaluate workplace violence hazards, including, but not limited to, scheduled periodic inspections to identify unsafe conditions and work practices and employee reports and concerns. Inspections shall be conducted when the plan is first established, after each workplace violence incident, and whenever the employer is made aware of a new or previously unrecognized hazard.
(J) Procedures to correct workplace violence hazards identified and evaluated in subparagraph (I) in a timely manner consistent with paragraph (6) of subdivision (a) of Section 3203 of Title 8 of the California Code of Regulations.
(K) Procedures for post-incident response and investigation.
(L) Procedures to review the effectiveness of the plan and revise the plan as needed, including, but not limited to, procedures to obtain the active involvement of employees and authorized employee representatives in reviewing the plan. The plan shall be reviewed at least annually, when a deficiency is observed or becomes apparent, and after a workplace violence incident.

(M) Procedures or other information required by the division and standards board as being necessary and appropriate to protect the health and safety of employees, pursuant to subdivision (h).

(d) (1) (A) **The employer shall record information in a violent incident log for every workplace violence incident.**

(B) Information that is recorded in the log for each incident shall be based on information solicited from the employees who experienced the workplace violence, on witness statements, and on investigation findings. The employer shall omit any element of personal identifying information sufficient to allow identification of any person involved in a violent incident, such as the person's name, address, electronic mail address, telephone number, social security number, or other information that, alone or in combination with other publicly available information, reveals the person's identity. The log shall be reviewed during the periodic reviews of the plan required in subparagraph (L) of paragraph (2) of subdivision (c).
(C) For purposes of this section, at a multiemployer worksite, the employer or employers whose employees experienced the workplace violence incident shall record the information in a violent incident log pursuant to subparagraph (A) and shall also provide a copy of that log to the controlling employer.
(2) The information recorded in the log shall include all of the following:
(A) The date, time, and location of the incident.
(B) The workplace violence type or types, as described in clause (iii) of subparagraph (B) of paragraph (6) of subdivision (a), involved in the incident.
(C) A detailed description of the incident.
(D) A classification of who committed the violence, including whether the perpetrator was a client or customer, family or friend of a client or customer, stranger with criminal intent, coworker, supervisor or manager, partner or spouse, parent or relative, or other perpetrator.
(E) A classification of circumstances at the time of the incident, including, but not limited to, whether the employee was completing usual job duties, working in poorly lit areas, rushed, working during a low staffing level, isolated or alone, unable to get help or assistance, working in a community setting, or working in an unfamiliar or new location.
(F) A classification of where the incident occurred, such as in the workplace, parking lot or other area outside the workplace, or other area.
(G) The type of incident, including, but not limited to, whether it involved any of the following:
(i) Physical attack without a weapon, including, but not limited to, biting, choking, grabbing, hair pulling, kicking, punching, slapping, pushing, pulling, scratching, or spitting.
(ii) Attack with a weapon or object, including, but not limited to, a firearm, knife, or other object.

(iii) Threat of physical force or threat of the use of a weapon or other object.
(iv) Sexual assault or threat, including, but not limited to, rape, attempted rape, physical display, or unwanted verbal or physical sexual contact.
(v) Animal attack.
(vi) Other.
(H) Consequences of the incident, including, but not limited to:
(i) Whether security or law enforcement was contacted and their response.
(ii) Actions taken to protect employees from a continuing threat or from any other hazards identified as a result of the incident.
(I) Information about the person completing the log, including their name, job title, and the date completed.

(e) (1) **The employer shall provide effective training to employees, as specified in paragraphs (2) and (3). Training material appropriate in content and vocabulary to the educational level, literacy, and language of employees shall be used.**

(2) The employer shall provide employees with initial training when the plan is first established, and annually thereafter, on all of the following:
(A) The employer’s plan, how to obtain a copy of the employer’s plan at no cost, and how to participate in development and implementation of the employer’s plan.
(B) The definitions and requirements of this section.
(C) How to report workplace violence incidents or concerns to the employer or law enforcement without fear of reprisal.
(D) Workplace violence hazards specific to the employees’ jobs, the corrective measures the employer has implemented, how to seek assistance to prevent or respond to violence, and strategies to avoid physical harm.
(E) The violent incident log required by subdivision (d) and how to obtain copies of records required by paragraphs (1) to (3), inclusive, of subdivision (f).
(F) An opportunity for interactive questions and answers with a person knowledgeable about the employer’s plan.
(3) Additional training shall be provided when a new or previously unrecognized workplace violence hazard has been identified and when changes are made to the plan. The additional training may be limited to addressing the new workplace violence hazard or changes to the plan.

(f) (1) **Records of workplace violence hazard identification, evaluation, and correction shall be created and maintained for a minimum of five years.**

(2) Training records shall be created and maintained for a minimum of one year and include training dates, contents or a summary of the training sessions, names and qualifications of persons conducting the training, and names and job titles of all persons attending the training sessions.
(3) Violent incident logs required by subdivision (d) shall be maintained for a minimum of five years.
(4) Records of workplace violence incident investigations conducted pursuant to subparagraph (K) of paragraph (2) of subdivision (c) shall be maintained for a minimum of five years. These records shall not contain “medical information,” as defined in subdivision (j) of Section 56.05 of the Civil Code.
(5) All records required by this subdivision shall be made available to the division upon request for examination and copying.
(6) All records required by paragraphs (1) to (3), inclusive, shall be made available to employees and their representatives, upon request and without cost, for examination and copying within 15 calendar days of a request.

(g) The division shall enforce this section by the issuance of a citation alleging a violation of this section and a notice of civil penalty in a manner consistent with Section 6317. Any person who receives a citation and penalty may appeal the citation and penalty to the appeals board in a manner consistent with Section 6319.

(h) The division shall propose, no later than December 31, 2025, and the standards board shall adopt, no later than December 31, 2026, standards regarding the plan required by this section. The standards shall include, at a minimum, the requirements of this section and any additional requirements the division deems necessary and appropriate to protect the health and safety of employees.

(i) Subdivisions (b) to (g), inclusive, shall be operative on and after July 1, 2024.

(Added by Stats. 2023, Ch. 289, Sec. 4. (SB 553) Effective January 1, 2024.)

MEDICAL WASTE MANAGEMENT ACT

JANUARY 2017

CALIFORNIA HEALTH AND SAFETY CODE SECTIONS 117600 - 118360

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH
MEDICAL WASTE MANAGEMENT PROGRAM
1616 CAPITOL AVENUE, MS-7405
P. O. BOX 997377
SACRAMENTO, CA 95899-7377

Medical Waste Management Act

California Health and Safety Code
Sections 117600 – 118360

Table of Contents

CHAPTER 1 - GENERAL PROVISIONS 7

117600 - CITATION OF PART 7
117605 - PREEMPT 7
117610 - REGULATIONS 8
117615 - LOCAL ORDINANCE 8

CHAPTER 2 - DEFINITIONS 8

117625 - DEFINITIONS 8
117630 - BIOHAZARD BAG 8
117636 - CHEMOTHERAPEUTIC AGENT 9
117637 - COMMON CARRIER 9
117640 - COMMON STORAGE FACILITY 9
117645 - CONTAINER 9
117647 - EMPTY 9
117650 - ENFORCEMENT AGENCY 9
117655 - ENFORCEMENT OFFICER 10
117657 - FUND 10
117660 - HAZARDOUS WASTE HAULER 10
117662 - HEALTH CARE PROFESSIONAL 10
117665 - HIGHLY COMMUNICABLE DISEASES 10
117670 - HOUSEHOLD WASTE 10
117671 - HOME-GENERATED SHARPS WASTE 10
117672 - INDUSTRIAL HYGIENIST 10
117675 - INFECTIOUS AGENT 11
117680 - LARGE QUANTITY GENERATOR 11
117685 - LOCAL AGENCY 11
117690 - MEDICAL WASTE 11
117695 - TREATED MEDICAL WASTE 13
117700 - NOT MEDICAL WASTE 13
117705 - MEDICAL WASTE GENERATOR 14
117710 - MEDICAL WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN 14
117715 - MEDICAL WASTE PERMIT 14
117720 - MEDICAL WASTE REGISTRATION 14
117725 - MEDICAL WASTE TREATMENT FACILITY 15
117730 - MIXED WASTE 15
117735 - OFFSITE 15
117740 - ONSITE 15

117742 - PARENT ORGANIZATION 15
117745 - PERSON 15
117747 - PHARMACEUTICAL 16
117750 - SHARPS CONTAINER 16
117760 - SMALL QUANTITY GENERATOR 16
117765 - STORAGE 16
117770 - TRACKING DOCUMENT 16
117771 - SHIPPING DOCUMENT 16
117775 - TRANSFER STATION 17
117776 - TRAUMA SCENE 17
117778 - TRAUMA SCENE WASTE MANAGEMENT PRACTITIONER 17
117780 - TREATMENT 17

CHAPTER 3 - POWERS AND DUTIES 17

117800 - LOCAL AGENCY 17
117805 - NOTIFY DEPARTMENT 17
117810 - IMPLEMENTATION 17
117815 - PROGRAM CONSISTENCY 18
117820 - MEDICAL WASTE MANAGEMENT PROGRAM 18
117825 - REGISTRATION AND PERMIT FEES 18
117830 - ENFORCEMENT AGENCY 19
117835 - DEPARTMENT'S DATABASE 19
117840 - INTENT OF THE LEGISLATURE 19
117845 - DEPARTMENT SHALL IMPLEMENT 19
117850 - SHARE INFORMATION 19
117855 - WITHDRAWAL 19
117860 - DEPARTMENT BECOMES ENFORCEMENT AGENCY 19
117870 - DEPARTMENT IDENTIFIES SIGNIFICANT VIOLATIONS 19
117875 - WITHDRAWAL 20
117880 - FEES 20
117885 - FUND 20
117890 - LARGE QUANTITY GENERATOR (LQG) REGISTRATION 20
117895 - SMALL QUANTITY GENERATOR (SQG) REGISTRATION 20
117900 - MEDICAL WASTE HAULER REGISTRATION 20
117903 - TREAT MEDICAL WASTE 21
117904 - CONSOLIDATION 21
117905 - OFFSITE TREATMENT 22
117908 - COMMON STORAGE FACILITY 22
117910 - TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE & GUIDANCE 22

CHAPTER 4 - SMALL QUANTITY GENERATOR REQUIREMENTS 22

117915 - CONTAINMENT AND STORAGE 22
117918 - TREATMENT 22
117920 - REGISTRATION 22
117923 - FEES 23
117924 - COLLECT FEES 23
117925 - ONSITE TREATMENT 24

117928 - COMMON STORAGE FACILITY 24
117930 - TREAT ONSITE 25
117935 - MEDICAL WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN 25
117938 - BIENNIAL INSPECTION 26
117940 - MEDICAL WASTE GENERATOR REGISTRATION 26
117943 - TREATMENT AND TRACKING RECORDS 26
117945 - INFORMATION DOCUMENTATION AND TRANSPORTATION RECORDS 27
117946 - MATERIALS OF TRADE EXEMPTION 27

CHAPTER 5 - LARGE QUANTITY GENERATOR REQUIREMENTS 28

117950 - REGISTRATION 28
117960 - MEDICAL WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN 28
117965 - ANNUAL INSPECTION 29
117967 - ONSITE TREATMENT 29
117970 - MEDICAL WASTE GENERATOR REGISTRATION 29
117971 - INSPECTION AND ENFORCEMENT COST RECOVERY 30
117975 - TREATMENT AND TRACKING RECORDS 30
117976 - MATERIALS OF TRADE EXEMPTION 30
117980 - CONTAINMENT AND STORAGE 31
117985 - TREATMENT 31
117990 - FEES 31
117995 - COLLECT FEES 31

CHAPTER 6 - MEDICAL WASTE HAULERS 32

118000 - TRANSPORTATION OF MEDICAL WASTE 32
118025 - REGISTRATION 33
118027 - UNKNOWINGLY TRANSPORTS 33
118029 - INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS 33
118032 - PHARMACEUTICAL WASTE HAULING EXEMPTION 34
118033 - SECURE PHARMACEUTICAL WASTE 35
118035 - TRANSFER OF MEDICAL WASTE 35
118040 - TRACKING RECORDS 36
118045 - TRANSFER STATION PERMIT 36

CHAPTER 7 - MEDICAL WASTE TREATMENT FACILITY PERMITS 37

118130 - PERMITS 37
118135 - PERMIT PRIOR TO OPERATION 37
118140 - ACCEPTING MEDICAL WASTE 37
118145 - ADJACENT SMALL QUANTITY GENERATORS 37
118147 - CONSOLIDATION 37
118150 - COMPLIANCE 38
118155 - PERMITS 38
118160 - PERMIT REQUIREMENTS 38
118165 - TREATMENT AND TRACKING RECORDS 39
118170 - DURATION OF PERMIT 39
118175 - CONDITIONS FOR GRANTING PERMIT 39
118180 - PERMIT VALIDITY 39

118185 - PERMIT PROCEDURES 40
118190 - PERMIT CONDITIONS 40
118195 - DENIAL OF PERMIT 40
118200 - INSPECTION 40
118205 - FEES 40
118210 - COLLECT FEES 40

CHAPTER 8 - TREATMENT 41

118215 - METHODS 41
118220 - ANATOMICAL PARTS 43
118222 - WASTE REQUIRING SPECIFIED METHODS 43
118225 - SHARPS WASTE 43
118230 - INCINERATION 44
118235 - EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN 44
118240 - ANIMAL CARCASSES 44
118245 - FEES FOR ALTERNATIVE TREATMENT TECHNOLOGIES 44

CHAPTER 9 - CONTAINMENT AND STORAGE 44

118275 - MEDICAL WASTE SEGREGATION AND STORAGE 44
118280 - CONTAINMENT AND STORAGE 46
118285 - SHARPS WASTE 48
118286 - MANAGEMENT OF HOME-GENERATED SHARPS WASTE 48
118290 - COMMON STORAGE FACILITY 48
118295 - WASH AND DECONTAMINATE CONTAINERS 49
118300 - SPILL DECONTAMINATION 49
118305 - SOLID WASTE 49
118307 - INTERIM STORAGE AREA 49
118310 - DESIGNATED ACCUMULATION AREA 49
118315 - TRASH CHUTES 50
118320 - COMPACTORS OR GRINDERS 50

CHAPTER 9.5 - TRAUMA SCENE WASTE MANAGEMENT 51

118321 - CITATION OF PART 51
118321.1 - REGISTRATION AND FEES 51
118321.2 - LIST OF PRACTITIONERS 51
118321.3 - DEPARTMENT DUTIES 51
118321.4 - TRANSPORTER DEEMED GENERATOR 52
118321.5 - REMOVAL, TRANSPORTATION, AND STORAGE 52
118321.6 - LIMITATIONS 52

CHAPTER 10 - ENFORCEMENT 53

118325 - INJUNCTION FOR VIOLATIONS 53
118330 - ORDER FOR COMPLIANCE / ADMINISTRATIVE PENALTY 53
118335 - INSPECTION 56
118340 - UNAUTHORIZED ACTIONS / CRIMINAL PENALTY 56
118345 - FALSE STATEMENTS / FAILURE TO REGISTER 57

CHAPTER 11 - SUSPENSION OR REVOCATION 57

118350 - GROUNDS FOR SUSPENSION OR REVOCATION 57
118355 - PROCEEDINGS 58
118360 - TEMPORARY PERMIT SUSPENSION 58

Chapter 1 - General Provisions

117600 - Citation of part
This part shall be known and may be cited as the Medical Waste Management Act.

117605 - Preempt

(a) This part governs medical waste management at the facility where waste is generated, at transfer stations, and at treatment facilities. This part also governs the tracking of medical waste beyond what is required in federal shipping documents and regulates aspects of the transport of regulated medical waste.

(b) Sections 173.196 and 173.197 of Title 49 of the Code of Federal Regulations impose standards for the transportation of medical waste on public roads and highways while in transport, unless an affected person applies to, and receives a determination of any perceived conflict from, the United States Secretary of Transportation. Domestic Mail Manual 601.10.17.5 (Mailability: Hazardous Materials: Sharps and Other Mailable Regulated Medical Waste) imposes standards for the transportation of medical waste through the mail and approves medical waste mail back systems.

(c) The department shall submit to the Legislature by no later than January 1, 2016, a report describing the interaction of federal and state law for the transport of regulated medical waste. The department shall convene a stakeholder group that includes, but is not limited to, small and large quantity generators, haulers, transfer station operators, treatment facility operators, local enforcement agencies, retailers, and other affected entities for this purpose. The reporting requirement imposed by this subdivision shall expire as of January 1, 2016, or when the report is submitted to the Legislature. The report submitted pursuant to this section shall be submitted in compliance with Section 9795 of the Government Code.

(d) The department may, in its discretion, update standards related to the transportation of medical waste during transit through a guidance document provided to regulated entities and posted on the department's Internet Web site. This guidance document shall be exempt from the Administrative Procedure Act (Chapter 3.5 (commencing with Section 11340) of Part 1 of Division 3 of Title 2 of the Government Code) to the extent that the department finds that the updated standards are consistent with the standards of the United States Department of Transportation.

(e) If an affected person, including the department, seeks a preemption determination pursuant to Section 5125 of Title 49 of the United States Code or by a court of competent jurisdiction, the department may, in its discretion, temporarily waive the state transportation requirements under this part until that determination is made and shall provide notice of the waiver on its Internet Web site.

(f) During the period of temporary waiver described in subdivision (e), or if preemption is found, the federal requirements shall be deemed to be the law of this state and enforceable by the department. The department may enforce these federal requirements by providing an updated guidance document to interested parties and posting the updated guidance document on the department’s Internet Web site.

(g) The Medical Waste Management Act does not preempt any local ordinance regulating infectious waste, as that term was defined by Section 25117.5 as it read on December 31, 1990, if the ordinance was in effect on January 1, 1990, and regulated both large and small quantity generators. Any ordinance may be amended in a manner that is consistent with this part.

117610 - Regulations
The department shall adopt regulations that will establish and ensure statewide standards for uniformity in the implementation and administration of this part and that will promote waste minimization and source reduction.

117615 - Local Ordinance
Notwithstanding Section 117605, with the approval of the director, and in the interest of public health, a local ordinance providing more stringent requirements than specified in this part may be implemented for a specified time period.

Chapter 2 - Definitions

117625 - Definitions
Unless the context requires otherwise, the definitions in this article govern the construction of this part.

117630 - Biohazard Bag

(a) “Biohazard bag” means a disposable film bag used to contain medical waste. Notwithstanding subdivision (b) of Section 117605, the film bags that are used to line the United States Department of Transportation (USDOT)-approved shipping containers for transport from the generator’s facility onto roadways and into commerce to a treatment and disposal facility shall be marked and certified by the manufacturer as having passed the tests prescribed for tear resistance in the American Society for Testing Materials (ASTM) D1922, “Standard Test Method for Propagation Tear Resistance of Plastic Film and Thin Sheeting by Pendulum Method” and for impact resistance in ASTM D1709, “Standard Test Methods for Impact Resistance of Plastic Film by the Free-Falling Dart Method,” as those documents were published on January 1, 2014. The film bag shall meet an impact resistance of 165 grams and a tearing resistance of 480 grams in both parallel and perpendicular planes with respect to the length of the bag.

(b) The biohazard bag that is used to collect medical waste within a facility shall be manufacturer certified to meet the ASTM D1709 dart drop test, provided that when the bag is prepared for transport offsite, it is placed into a USDOT-approved container lined with a biohazard bag that is ASTM D1709 and ASTM D1922 certified.

(c) The color of the bag shall be red, except when yellow bags are used to further segregate trace chemotherapy waste and white bags are used to further segregate pathology waste. The biohazard bag shall be marked with the international biohazard symbol and may be labeled by reference as authorized by the USDOT.

117636 - Chemotherapeutic Agent
"Chemotherapeutic agent" means an agent that kills or prevents the reproduction of malignant cells. Chemotherapeutic agent excludes anti-inflammatory and antibiotic medications used to treat malignant cells in the practice of veterinary medicine.

117637 - Common Carrier
"Common carrier" means either of the following:

(a) A person or company that has a United States Department of Transportation number issued by the Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration and is registered with the Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration as a for-hire property carrier.

(b) A person or company that has a motor carrier of property permit issued by the Department of Motor Vehicles pursuant to the Motor Carriers of Property Permit Act (Division 14.85 (commencing with Section 34600) of the Vehicle Code) and, if applicable, a carrier identification number issued by the Department of the California Highway Patrol pursuant to Section 34507.5 of the Vehicle Code.

117640 - Common Storage Facility
"Common storage facility" means any designated accumulation area that is onsite and is used by small quantity generators otherwise operating independently for the storage of medical waste for collection by a registered hazardous waste hauler.

117645 - Container
"Container" means the rigid container in which the medical waste is placed prior to transporting for purposes of storage or treatment.

117647 - Empty
"Empty" means a condition achieved when tubing, a container, or inner liner removed from a container that previously contained liquid or solid material, including, but not limited to, a chemotherapeutic agent, is considered empty. The tubing, container, or inner liner removed from the container shall be considered empty if it has been emptied so that the following conditions are met:

(a) If the material that the tubing, container, or inner liner held is pourable, no material can be poured or drained from the tubing, container, or inner liner when held in any orientation, including, but not limited to, when tilted or inverted.

(b) If the material that the container or inner liner held is not pourable, no material or waste remains in the container or inner liner that can feasibly be removed by scraping.

117650 - Enforcement Agency
"Enforcement agency" means the department or the local agency administering this part.

117655 - Enforcement Officer
“Enforcement officer” means the director, or agents or registered environmental health specialists appointed by the director, and all local health officers, directors of environmental health, and their duly authorized registered environmental health specialists and environmental health specialist trainees, or the designees of the director, local health officers, or the directors of environmental health.

117657 - Fund
“Fund” means the Medical Waste Management Fund created pursuant to Section 117885.

117660 - Hazardous Waste Hauler
“Hazardous waste hauler” means a person registered as a hazardous waste hauler pursuant to Article 6 (commencing with Section 25160) and Article 6.5 (commencing with Section 25167.1) of Chapter 6.5 of Division 20 and Chapter 30 (commencing with Section 66001) of Division 4 of Title 22 of the California Code of Regulations.

117662 - Health Care Professional
“Health care professional” means any person licensed or certified pursuant to Division 2 (commencing with Section 500) of the Business and Professions Code; any person licensed pursuant to the Osteopathic Initiative Act, as set forth in Chapter 8 (commencing with Section 3600) of Division 2 of the Business and Professions Code, or pursuant to the Chiropractic Initiative Act, as set forth in Chapter 2 (commencing with Section 1000) of Division 2 of the Business and Professions Code; and any person certified pursuant to Division 2.5 (commencing with Section 1797).

117665 - Highly Communicable Diseases
“Highly communicable diseases” means diseases, such as those caused by organisms classified by the federal Centers for Disease Control and Prevention as risk group 3 organisms or higher.

117670 - Household Waste
“Household waste” means any material, including garbage, trash, and sanitary wastes in septic tanks and medical waste, that is derived from households, farms, or ranches. Household waste does not include trauma scene waste.

117671 - Home-generated Sharps Waste
“Home-generated sharps waste” means hypodermic needles, pen needles, intravenous needles, lancets, and other devices that are used to penetrate the skin for the delivery of medications derived from a household, including a multifamily residence or household.

117672 - Industrial Hygienist
“Industrial hygienist” means a person who has met the educational requirements of an industrial hygiene certification organization, as defined in subdivision (c) of Section 20700 of the Business and Professions Code, and who has had at least one year in the comprehensive practice of industrial hygiene, as defined in subdivision (a) of Section 20700 of the Business and Professions Code.

117675 - Infectious Agent
"Infectious agent" means a type of microorganism, bacteria, mold, parasite, or virus, including, but not limited to, organisms managed as Biosafety Level II, III, or IV by the federal Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, that normally causes, or significantly contributes to the cause of, increased morbidity or mortality of human beings.

117680 - Large Quantity Generator
"Large quantity generator" means a medical waste generator, other than a trauma scene waste management practitioner, that generates 200 or more pounds of medical waste in any month of a 12-month period.

117685 - Local Agency
"Local agency" means the local health department, as defined in Section 101185, or the local comprehensive environmental agency established in accordance with Section 101275, of a county that has elected to adopt a local ordinance to administer and enforce this part, pursuant to Chapter 3 (commencing with Section 117800).

117690 - Medical Waste

(a) "Medical waste" means any biohazardous, pathology, pharmaceutical, or trace chemotherapy waste not regulated by the federal Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976 (Public Law 94-580), as amended; sharps and trace chemotherapy wastes generated in a health care setting in the diagnosis, treatment, immunization, or care of humans or animals; waste generated in autopsy or necropsy; waste generated during preparation of a body for final disposition such as cremation or interment; waste generated in research pertaining to the production or testing of microbiologicals; waste generated in research using human or animal pathogens; sharps and laboratory waste that poses a potential risk of infection to humans generated in the inoculation of animals in commercial farming operations; waste generated from the consolidation of home-generated sharps; and waste generated in the cleanup of trauma scenes. Biohazardous, pathology, pharmaceutical, sharps, and trace chemotherapy wastes that meet the conditions of this section are not subject to any of the hazardous waste requirements found in Chapter 6.5 (commencing with Section 25100) of Division 20.

(b) For purposes of this part the following definitions apply:

(1) "Biohazardous waste" includes all of the following:

(A)

(i) Regulated medical waste, clinical waste, or biomedical waste that is a waste or reusable material derived from the medical treatment of a human or from an animal that is suspected by the attending veterinarian of being infected with a pathogen that is also infectious to humans, which includes diagnosis and immunization; or from biomedical research, which includes the production and testing of biological products.

(ii) Regulated medical waste or clinical waste or biomedical waste suspected of containing a highly communicable disease.

(B) Laboratory waste such as human specimen cultures or animal specimen cultures that are infected with pathogens that are also infectious to humans; cultures and stocks of infectious agents from research; wastes from the production of bacteria, viruses, spores, discarded live and attenuated vaccines used in human health care or research, discarded animal vaccines, including Brucellosis and Contagious Ecthyma, as defined by the department; culture dishes, devices used to transfer, inoculate, and mix cultures; and wastes identified by Section 173.134 of Title 49 of the Code of Federal Regulations as Category B "once wasted" for laboratory wastes.

(C) Waste that, at the point of transport from the generator's site or at the point of disposal contains recognizable fluid human blood, fluid human blood products, containers, or equipment containing human blood that is fluid, or blood from animals suspected by the attending veterinarian of being contaminated with infectious agents known to be contagious to humans.

(D) Waste containing discarded materials contaminated with excretion, exudate, or secretions from humans or animals that are required to be isolated by the infection control staff, the attending physician and surgeon, the attending veterinarian, or the local health officer, to protect others from highly communicable diseases or diseases of animals that are communicable to humans.

(2) Pathology waste includes both of the following:

(A) Human body parts, with the exception of teeth, removed at surgery and surgery specimens or tissues removed at surgery or autopsy that are suspected by the health care professional of being contaminated with infectious agents known to be contagious to humans or having been fixed in formaldehyde or another fixative.

(B) Animal parts, tissues, fluids, or carcasses suspected by the attending veterinarian of being contaminated with infectious agents known to be contagious to humans.

(3) "Pharmaceutical waste" means a pharmaceutical, as defined in Section 117747, including trace chemotherapy waste, that is a waste, as defined in Section 25124. For purposes of this part, "pharmaceutical waste" does not include a pharmaceutical that meets either of the following criteria:

(A) The pharmaceutical is being sent out of the state to a reverse distributor, as defined in Section 4040.5 of the Business and Professions Code, that is licensed as a wholesaler of dangerous drugs by the California State Board of Pharmacy pursuant to Section 4161 of the Business and Professions Code.

(B) The pharmaceutical is being sent by a reverse distributor, as defined in Section 4040.5 of the Business and Professions Code, offsite for treatment and disposal in accordance with applicable laws, or to a reverse distributor that is licensed as a wholesaler of dangerous drugs by the California State Board of Pharmacy pursuant to Section 4160 of the Business and Professions Code and as a permitted transfer station if the reverse distributor is located within the state.

(4) “Sharps waste” means a device that has acute rigid corners, edges, or protuberances capable of cutting or piercing, including, but not limited to, hypodermic needles, hypodermic needles with syringes, blades, needles with attached tubing, acupuncture needles, root canal files, broken glass items used in health care such as Pasteur pipettes and blood vials contaminated with biohazardous waste, and any item capable of cutting or piercing from trauma scene waste.

(5) “Trace chemotherapeutic waste” means waste that is contaminated through contact with, or having previously contained, chemotherapeutic agents, including, but not limited to, gloves, disposable gowns, towels, and intravenous solution bags and attached tubing that are empty. A biohazardous waste that meets the conditions of this paragraph is not subject to the hazardous waste requirements of Chapter 6.5 (commencing with Section 25100) of Division 20.

(6) “Trauma scene waste” means waste that is a regulated waste, as defined in Section 5193 of Title 8 of the California Code of Regulations, and that has been removed, is to be removed, or is in the process of being removed, from a trauma scene by a trauma scene waste management practitioner.

117695 - Treated Medical Waste

Medical waste that has been treated in accordance with the provisions of the Medical Waste Management Act, Chapter 8 (commencing with Section 118215), and that is not otherwise hazardous, shall thereafter be considered solid waste as defined in Section 40191 of the Public Resources Code and not medical waste.

117700 - Not Medical Waste

Medical waste does not include any of the following:

(a) Waste generated in food processing or biotechnology that does not contain an infectious agent, as defined in Section 117675, or an agent capable of causing an infection that is highly communicable, as defined in Section 117665.

(b) Waste generated in biotechnology that does not contain human blood or blood products or animal blood or blood products suspected of being contaminated with infectious agents known to be communicable to humans or a highly communicable disease.

(c) Urine, feces, saliva, sputum, nasal secretions, sweat, tears, or vomitus, unless it contains visible or recognizable fluid blood, as provided in subparagraph (C) of paragraph (1) of subdivision (b) of Section 117690.

(d) Waste which is not biohazardous, such as paper towels, paper products, articles containing nonfluid blood, and other medical solid waste products commonly found in the facilities of medical waste generators.

(e) Hazardous waste, radioactive waste, or household waste, including, but not limited to, home-generated sharps waste, as defined in Section 117671.

(f) Waste generated from normal and legal veterinarian, agricultural, and animal livestock management practices on a farm or ranch unless otherwise specified in law.

117705 - Medical Waste Generator

"Medical waste generator" means any person whose act or process produces medical waste and includes, but is not limited to, a provider of health care, as defined in Section 56.05 of the Civil Code. All of the following are examples of businesses that generate medical waste:

(a) Medical and dental offices, clinics, hospitals, surgery centers, laboratories, research laboratories, unlicensed health facilities, those facilities required to be licensed pursuant to Division 2 (commencing with Section 1200), chronic dialysis clinics, as regulated pursuant to Division 2 (commencing with Section 1200), and education and research facilities.

(b) Veterinary offices, veterinary clinics, and veterinary hospitals.

(c) Pet shops.

(d) Trauma scene waste management practitioners.

117710 - Medical Waste Management Plan

"Medical waste management plan" means a document that is completed by generators of medical waste that describes how the medical waste generated at their facility shall be segregated, handled, stored, packaged, treated, or shipped for treatment, as applicable, pursuant to Section 117935 for small quantity generators and Section 117960 for large quantity generators, on forms prepared by the enforcement agency, if those forms are provided by the enforcement agency.

117715 - Medical Waste Permit

"Medical waste permit" means a permit issued by the enforcement agency to a medical waste treatment facility.

117720 - Medical Waste Registration

"Medical waste registration" means a registration issued by the enforcement agency to a medical waste generator.

117725 - Medical Waste Treatment Facility

(a) “Medical waste treatment facility” means all land and structures, and other appurtenances or improvements on the land under the control of the treatment facility, used for treating medical waste offsite from a medical waste generator, including all associated handling and storage of medical waste as permitted by the department.

(b) For purposes of this section, land is under the control of the treatment facility if it is owned, rented, or controlled by contractual agreement.

117730 - Mixed Waste

“Mixed waste” means mixtures of medical and nonmedical waste. Mixed waste is medical waste, except for all of the following:

(a) Medical waste and hazardous waste is hazardous waste and is subject to regulation as specified in the statutes and regulations applicable to hazardous waste.

(b) Medical waste and radioactive waste is radioactive waste and is subject to regulation as specified in the statutes and regulations applicable to radioactive waste.

(c) Medical waste, hazardous waste, and radioactive waste is radioactive mixed waste and is subject to regulation as specified in the statutes and regulations applicable to hazardous waste and radioactive waste.

117735 - Offsite

“Offsite” means any location that is not onsite.

117740 - Onsite

(a) “Onsite” means a medical waste treatment facility, or common storage facility on the same or adjacent property as the generator of the medical waste being treated.

(b) “Adjacent,” for purposes of subdivision (a), means real property within 400 yards from the property boundary of the existing medical waste treatment facility.

117742 - Parent Organization

“Parent organization” means an organization that employs or contracts with health care professionals who provide health care services at a location other than at a health care facility specified in subdivision (a) of Section 117705.

117745 - Person

“Person” means an individual, trust, firm, joint stock company, business concern, partnership, association, limited liability company, and corporation, including, but not limited to, a government corporation. “Person” also includes any city, county, district, commission, the state or any department, agency, or political subdivision thereof, the Regents of the University of California, any interstate body, and the federal government or any department or agency thereof to the extent permitted by law.

117747 - Pharmaceutical

(a) “Pharmaceutical” means a prescription or over-the-counter human or veterinary drug, including, but not limited to, a drug as defined in Section 109925 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, as amended, (21 U.S.C.A. Sec. 321(g)(1)).

(b) For purposes of this part, “pharmaceutical” does not include any pharmaceutical that is regulated pursuant to either of the following:

(1) The federal Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976, as amended (42 U.S.C.A. Sec. 6901 et seq.). This waste stream shall be handled as a hazardous waste under the authority of Chapter 6.5 (commencing with Section 25100) of Division 20.

(2) The Radiation Control Law (Chapter 8 (commencing with Section 114960) of Part 9).

117750 - Sharps Container

(a) “Sharps container” means a rigid puncture-resistant container used in patient care or research activities meeting the standards of, and receiving approval from, the United States Food and Drug Administration as a medical device used for the collection of discarded medical needles or other sharps.

(b) Sharps containers, including those used to containerize trace chemotherapeutic wastes, shall not be lined with a plastic bag or inner liner.

117760 - Small Quantity Generator

“Small quantity generator” means a medical waste generator, other than a trauma scene waste management practitioner, that generates less than 200 pounds per month of medical waste.

117765 - Storage

“Storage” means the holding of medical wastes, in compliance with the Medical Waste Management Act, including Chapter 9 (commencing with Section 118275), at a designated accumulation area, offsite point of consolidation, transfer station, other registered facility, or in a vehicle detached from its means of locomotion.

117770 - Tracking Document

“Tracking document” means the medical waste tracking document specified in Section 118040.

117771 - Shipping Document

“Shipping document” means the medical waste shipping document required by the United States Department of Transportation pursuant to Section 172.200 et seq. of Title 49 of the Code of Federal Regulations or the document required by the United States Postal Service pursuant to Domestic Mail Manual 601.10.17.5 (Mailability: Hazardous Materials: Sharps and Other Mailable Regulated Medical Waste).

117775 - Transfer Station

(a) "Transfer station" means an offsite location permitted by the department where medical waste is loaded, unloaded, stored, or consolidated by a registered hazardous waste hauler during the normal course of transportation of the medical waste.

(b) "Transfer station" does not include any onsite facility, including, but not limited to, common storage facilities, facilities of medical waste generators employed for the purpose of consolidation, or onsite treatment facilities.

117776 - Trauma Scene

(a) "Trauma scene" means a location soiled by, or contaminated with, human blood, human body fluids, or other residues from the scene of a serious human injury, illness, or death.

(b) For purposes of this section, a location may include, but is not limited to, a physical structure that is not fixed geographically, such as mobile homes, trailers, or vehicles.

117778 - Trauma Scene Waste Management Practitioner

"Trauma scene waste management practitioner" means a person who undertakes as a commercial activity the removal of human blood, human body fluids, and other associated residues from the scene of a serious human injury, illness, or death, and who is registered with the department pursuant to Chapter 9.5 (commencing with Section 118321).

117780 - Treatment

"Treatment" means any method, technique, or process designed to change or destroy the biological character or composition of any medical waste so as to eliminate its potential for causing disease or creating public or environmental harm, as specified in Chapter 8 (commencing with Section 118215).

Chapter 3 - Powers and Duties

117800 - Local Agency

A local agency may implement a medical waste management program by the adoption of an ordinance or resolution by the local governing body, in accordance with this part.

117805 - Notify Department

A local agency that elects to implement a medical waste management program shall notify the department of its intent to do so.

117810 - Implementation

(a) If a local agency does not elect to implement a medical waste management program, the local agency may elect to contract with another local agency to implement a medical waste management program or to implement it at a later date.

This election shall be made by the local governing body, that shall take effect 90 days after a notice of election is filed with the department.

(b) A local agency that elects to implement a medical waste management program shall continue to implement that program until the local governing body terminates the election by resolution or ordinance or the department revokes the authority of the local agency to administer a medical waste management program. The local agency shall file the notice of termination with the department at least 180 days prior to the termination date.

117815 - Program Consistency

Any local agency that has elected to implement a medical waste management program shall maintain a program that is consistent with Section 117820 and the regulations adopted pursuant to that section. With the approval of the department, the local agency may administer or enforce this part with respect to any person.

117820 - Medical Waste Management Program

A medical waste management program shall include, but not be limited to, all of the following:

(a) Issuing medical waste registrations and permits pursuant to the Medical Waste Management Act.

(b) Processing and reviewing the medical waste management plans and inspecting onsite treatment facilities in accordance with Chapter 4 (commencing with Section 117925) for all small quantity medical waste generators required to be registered.

(c) Conducting an evaluation, inspection, or records review for all facilities or persons issued a large quantity medical waste registration pursuant to Chapter 5 (commencing with Section 117950) or issued a permit for an onsite medical waste treatment facility pursuant to Chapter 7 (commencing with Section 118130).

(d) Inspecting medical waste generators in response to complaints or emergency incidents, or as part of an investigation or evaluation of the implementation of the medical waste management plan.

(e) Inspecting medical waste treatment facilities in response to a complaint or as part of an investigation or emergency incident.

(f) Taking enforcement action for the suspension or revocation of medical waste permits issued by the local agency pursuant to this part.

(g) Referring or initiating proceedings for civil or criminal prosecution of violations specified in Chapter 10 (commencing with Section 118335).

(h) Reporting in a manner determined by the department so that the statewide effectiveness of the program can be determined.

117825 - Registration and Permit Fees

Each local enforcement agency that elects to implement the medical waste management program may prescribe, by resolution or ordinance, the registration and permit fees necessary to pay its reasonable expenses to administer the program.

117830 - Enforcement Agency

(a) A local agency electing to implement a medical waste management program is the enforcement agency for the jurisdiction where it is located and so designated by the department.

(b) In any local jurisdiction where the local agency does not elect to implement a medical waste management program, the department is the enforcement agency.

(c) Nothing in this chapter shall prevent a district attorney, city attorney, or city prosecutor from bringing any enforcement action for violation of this chapter.

117835 - Department's Database

The department shall establish and maintain a database of persons registered as small quantity generators and as large quantity generators for whom the department is the enforcement agency under Chapter 4 (commencing with Section 117925) and Chapter 5 (commencing with Section 117950).

117840 - Intent of the Legislature

It is the intent of the Legislature that the program carried out pursuant to this part be fully supported from the fees received pursuant to this part.

117845 - Department shall Implement

The department shall implement this part so as to maximize the funds that may be received from the federal government.

117850 - Share Information

Information may be shared between the department and the Environmental Protection Agency.

117855 - Withdrawal

If the department finds that a local enforcement agency is not consistently fulfilling its responsibilities, the department shall notify the agency of the particular reasons for finding that the agency is not fulfilling its responsibilities and of the department's intention to withdraw its designation if, within a time to be specified in that notification, but in no event less than 30 days, the agency does not take the corrective action specified by the department.

117860 - Department Becomes Enforcement Agency

If the department withdraws its designation of a local enforcement agency, the department shall become the enforcement agency within the jurisdiction of the local enforcement agency.

117870 - Department Identifies Significant Violations

If the department identifies significant violations of minimum requirements that were not identified and resolved through previous inspections by the local enforcement agency, the department shall do all of the following:

(a) Conduct a performance review of the agency within 120 days.

(b) Prepare a written performance report within 60 days of the review.

(c) Require the submission of a plan of correction by the agency within 90 days of receiving the report.

117875 - Withdrawal

The department shall withdraw a local enforcement agency’s designation pursuant to Section 117860 if it determines that the enforcement agency has failed to submit an adequate plan of correction or has failed to implement the plan.

117880 - Fees

If the department becomes the enforcement agency, it may charge the fees specified in this part.

117885 - Fund

(a) There is in the State Treasury the Medical Waste Management Fund, that shall be administered by the director. Money deposited in the fund shall be available to the department, upon appropriation by the Legislature, for the purposes of this part.

(b) In addition to any other funds transferred by the Legislature to the Medical Waste Management Fund, the following shall be deposited in the fund:

(1) Fees, penalties, interest earned, and fines collected by, or on behalf of, the department pursuant to this part.

(2) Funds granted by the federal government for purposes of carrying out this part.

117890 - Large Quantity Generator (LQG) Registration

(a) No large quantity generator shall generate medical waste unless the large quantity generator is registered with the enforcement agency pursuant to this part.

(b) Registration pursuant to this part shall also allow the large quantity generator to generate medical waste at temporary events, including, but not limited to, health fairs, vaccination clinics, and veteran stand downs, without further registration or permitting required. The large quantity generator shall notify the local enforcement agency of their intended participation in a temporary event at least 72 hours before the event, unless the sponsor of the temporary event previously notified the local enforcement agency of the event.

117895 - Small Quantity Generator (SQG) Registration

Registration pursuant to this part shall allow a small quantity generator to generate medical waste at temporary events, including, but not limited to, health fairs, vaccination clinics, and veteran stand downs, without further registration or permitting required. The small quantity generator shall notify the local enforcement agency of their intended participation in a temporary event at least 72 hours before the event, unless the sponsor of the temporary event previously notified the local enforcement agency of the event.

117900 - Medical Waste Hauler Registration

No person shall haul medical waste unless the person is one of the following:

(a) A registered hazardous waste hauler pursuant to the requirements of Chapter 6.5 (commencing with Section 25100) of Division 20.

(b) A mail-back system approved by the United States Postal Service.

(c) A common carrier allowed to haul pharmaceutical waste pursuant to Section 118029 or 118032.

(d) A small quantity generator or a large quantity generator transporting limited quantities of medical waste with an exemption granted pursuant to either Section 117946 or Section 117976, respectively.

(e) A registered trauma scene waste practitioner hauling trauma scene waste pursuant to Section 118321.5.

117903 - Treat Medical Waste

No person shall treat medical waste unless the person is permitted by the enforcement agency as required by this part or unless the treatment is performed by a medical waste generator and is a treatment method approved pursuant to Chapter 8 (commencing with Section 118215).

117904 - Consolidation

(a) In addition to the consolidation points authorized pursuant to Section 118147, the enforcement agency may approve a location as a point of consolidation for the collection of home-generated sharps waste, which, after collection, shall be transported and treated as medical waste.

(b) A consolidation location approved pursuant to this section shall be known as a “home-generated sharps consolidation point.”

(c) A home-generated sharps consolidation point is not subject to the requirements of Chapter 9 (commencing with Section 118275), to the permit or registration requirements of this part, or to any permit or registration fees, with regard to the activity of consolidating home-generated sharps waste pursuant to this section.

(d) A home-generated sharps consolidation point shall comply with all of the following requirements:

(1) All sharps waste shall be placed in sharps containers.

(2) Sharps containers ready for disposal shall not be held for more than seven days without the written approval of the enforcement agency.

(e) An operator of a home-generated sharps consolidation point approved pursuant to this section shall not be considered the generator of that waste, but shall be listed on the tracking documents in compliance with the United States Postal Service requirements for waste shipped through mail back and on the tracking documents as required by the department.

(f) The medical waste treatment facility which treats the sharps waste subject to this section shall maintain the tracking document required by Sections 118040 and 118165 with regard to that sharps waste.

117905 - Offsite Treatment
The department is the enforcement agency for offsite treatment facilities.

117908 - Common Storage Facility
The accumulated medical waste of more than one medical waste generator shall not be stored in a common storage facility unless that facility is registered with the enforcement agency.

117910 - Technical Assistance & Guidance
The department shall provide ongoing technical assistance and guidance to local enforcement agencies to assist them in their decision making processes. This assistance shall include, but is not limited to, providing all of the following:

(a) Technical studies and reports.

(b) Copies of innovative facility operation plans.

(c) Investigative findings and analysis of new waste management practices and procedures.

Chapter 4 - Small Quantity Generator Requirements

117915 - Containment and Storage
Containment and storage of medical waste shall be in accordance with Chapter 9 (commencing with Section 118275).

117918 - Treatment
Medical waste shall be treated using treatment technologies in accordance with Chapter 8 (commencing with Section 118215).

117920 - Registration
The fee schedule specified in Section 117923 shall be for the issuance of medical waste registrations and for conducting inspections pursuant to this chapter when the department serves as the enforcement agency for small quantity generators. This fee schedule shall be adjusted annually in accordance with Section 100425, or as provided in the regulations adopted by the department, not to exceed the reasonable regulatory costs of the department. Local enforcement agencies shall set fees that shall be sufficient to cover their costs in implementing this part with regard to small quantity generators required to be registered pursuant to Section 117925.

117923 - Fees

(a) The registration and inspection fee for small quantity generators using onsite treatment, including an autoclave, incinerator, or microwave technology, to treat medical waste is one hundred dollars ($100), that shall be paid once every two years.

(b) The annual permit fee for a common storage facility permitted pursuant to Section 117928 is the amount specified in the following schedule:

(1) For storage facilities serving 10 or fewer generators, the permit fee is one hundred dollars ($100).

(2) For storage facilities serving 11 or more generators, but not more than 50 generators, the permit fee is two hundred fifty dollars ($250).

(3) For storage facilities serving more than 50 generators, the permit fee is five hundred dollars ($500).

117924 - Collect Fees

(a) When the department is the enforcement agency, the department shall impose and cause the collection of an annual medical waste generator fee in an amount not to exceed twenty-five dollars ($25) on small quantity generators of medical waste, except for those small quantity generators that are required to register pursuant to Section 117925 and those generators generating only pharmaceutical waste as defined in paragraph (3) of subdivision (b) of Section 117690. Nothing in this part shall prevent the department from contracting with entities other than the department for these fee collection activities or from entering into agreements with medical waste transporters for the collection of these fees, if the department determines that such a fee collection arrangement would be cost effective.

(b) If the department determines to enter into a contract with a medical waste transporter for the collection of the fees, the department shall do all of the following:

(1) Establish that not more than 7.5 percent of the fees collected may be recovered by the medical waste transporter as administrative costs for the collection of those fees.

(2) Establish that the administrative costs for the collection of the fees shall be the same for all medical waste transporters.
(3) Prohibit any medical waste transporter from waiving the generator fee without the written approval of the department and only if the medical waste generator has made a written request for the waiver.

(4) Require the medical waste transporter to report the fees collected pursuant to subdivision (a) to the department.

(5) Prohibit the medical waste transporter from assuming the role of the department as an enforcement agent for purposes of collecting the medical waste generator fees.

(6) Require medical waste transporters to include the following language in at least 12-point type on their invoices to medical waste generators: “Pursuant to Section 117924 of the California Health and Safety Code, the State Department of Public Health has contracted with us to collect your annual medical waste generator fee. The department may offset our costs of collection and administration in an amount that may not exceed 7.5 percent of the fee collected. We may not waive the fee without written approval of the department, and only if you have made a written request for the waiver.”

(7) Ensure that generators subject to this section are required to pay the fee only once per year.

117925 - Onsite Treatment

(a) Each small quantity generator using onsite steam sterilization, incineration, or microwave technology to treat medical waste shall register with the enforcement agency. Small quantity generators owning or operating a medical waste treatment facility shall also apply for a permit for that treatment facility pursuant to Chapter 7 (commencing with Section 118130).

(b) Small quantity generators using onsite treatment, as specified in subdivision (a), that operate as a business in the same building, or that are associated with a group practice in the same building, may register as one generator.

(c) Small quantity generators using onsite treatment, as specified in subdivision (a), as specified in subdivision (b), operating in different buildings on the same or adjacent property, or as approved by the enforcement agency, may register as one generator.

(d) “Adjacent,” for purposes of subdivision (c), means real property within 400 yards from the property boundary of the primary registration site.

117928 - Common Storage Facility

(a) Any common storage facility for the collection of medical waste produced by small quantity generators operating independently, but sharing common storage facilities, shall have a permit issued by the enforcement agency prior to the commencement of storage of medical waste in the common storage facility.

(b) A permit for any common storage facility specified in subdivision (a) may be obtained by any one of the following:

(1) A provider of health care as defined in Section 56.05 of the Civil Code.

(2) The registered hazardous waste transporter.

(3) The property owner.

(4) The property management firm responsible for providing tenant services to the medical waste generators.

117930 - Treat Onsite
Small quantity generators that treat waste onsite, pursuant to subdivision (a) of Section 117925, shall register with the enforcement agency prior to the commencement of treatment.

117935 - Medical Waste Management Plan
A small quantity generator required to register with the enforcement agency pursuant to Section 117930 shall file with the enforcement agency a medical waste management plan on forms prescribed by the enforcement agency, if provided. The plans shall contain, but are not limited to, all of the following:

> (a) The name of the person.
>
> (b) The business address of the person.
>
> (c) The type of business.
>
> (d) The types, and the estimated average monthly quantity, of medical waste generated.
>
> (e) The type of treatment used onsite.
>
> (f) The name and business address of the registered hazardous waste hauler used by the generator for backup treatment and disposal, for waste when the onsite treatment method is not appropriate due to the hazardous or radioactive characteristics of the waste.
>
> (g) The name of the registered hazardous waste hauler used by the generator to have untreated medical waste removed for treatment and disposal, if applicable.
>
> (h) The name of the common carrier used by the generator to transport pharmaceutical waste offsite for treatment and disposal pursuant to Section 118032, if applicable.
>
> (i) If applicable, the steps taken to categorize the pharmaceutical wastes generated at the facility to ensure that the wastes are properly disposed of as follows:
>
> > (1) Pharmaceutical wastes classified by the federal Drug Enforcement Agency (DEA) as “controlled substances” are disposed of in compliance with DEA requirements.
> >
> > (2) The name and business address of the registered hazardous waste hauler used by the generator to have wastes that are not regulated pursuant to the federal Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976 and nonradioactive pharmaceutical wastes regulated as medical waste safely removed for treatment in compliance with subdivision (b) of Section 118222 as waste requiring specific methods.
>
> (j) A closure plan for the termination of treatment at the facility using, at a minimum, one of the methods of decontamination specified in subdivision (a) or (b) of Section 118295,

thereby rendering the property to an acceptable sanitary condition following the completion of treatment services at the site.

(k) A statement certifying that the information provided is complete and accurate.

117938 - Biennial Inspection

(a) Small quantity generators using onsite steam sterilization, incineration, or microwave technology to treat medical waste are subject to biennial inspection of that onsite treatment facility by the enforcement agency and may be subject to the permitting requirements for onsite medical waste treatment facilities as determined by the enforcement agency.

(b)

(1) The operators of the treatment equipment specified in subdivision (a) shall be required to receive training in the operation of the treatment equipment, proper protective equipment to wear, if any, how to clean up spills, and other information required to operate the treatment equipment in a safe and effective manner.

(2) Annual training for the operators shall be provided after the initial training has been completed.

(3) The training shall be documented for each treatment operator and retained on file at the generator facility for a minimum of two years. Training shall comply with applicable federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration regulations, including those found in Section 1910 of Title 29 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

117940 - Medical Waste Generator Registration

(a) Each enforcement agency shall follow procedures consistent with this chapter in registering medical waste generators.

(b) Each medical waste generator registration for small quantity generators issued by the enforcement agency shall be valid for two years.

(c) An application for renewal of the registration for small quantity generators shall be filed with the enforcement agency on or before the expiration date.

(d) Generators shall submit an updated application form when any of the information specified in their medical waste management plan, created pursuant to Section 117935, changes. The updated application form shall be submitted within 30 days of the change.

117943 - Treatment and Tracking Records

(a) A medical waste generator required to register pursuant to this chapter shall maintain for a minimum of three years individual treatment operating records, and if applicable, the tracking document for all untreated medical waste shipped offsite for treatment, and shall report or submit to the enforcement agency, upon request, all of the following:

(1) Treatment operating records. Operating records shall be maintained in written or electronic form.

(2) An emergency action plan complying with regulations adopted by the department.

(3) Tracking documents or electronically archived tracking documents maintained by the facility and medical waste hauler of all untreated medical waste shipped offsite for treatment.

(b) Documentation shall be made available to the enforcement agency onsite.

117945 - Information Documentation and Transportation Records

(a) A small quantity generator who is not required to register pursuant to this chapter shall maintain on file in its office all of the following:

(1) An information document stating how the generator contains, stores, treats, and disposes of any medical waste generated through any act or process of the generator.

(2) Records required by the United States Postal Service of any medical waste shipped offsite for treatment and disposal. The small quantity generator shall maintain, or have available electronically at the facility or from the medical waste hauler or common carrier, these records, for not less than three years.

(b) Documentation shall be made available to the enforcement agency onsite.

117946 - Materials of Trade Exemption

(a) A small quantity medical waste generator or parent organization that employs health care professionals who generate medical waste may transport medical waste generated in limited quantities up to 35.2 pounds to the central location of accumulation, provided that all of the following are met:

(1) The principal business of the generator is not to transport or treat regulated medical waste.

(2) The generator shall adhere to the conditions and requirements set forth in the materials of trade exception, as specified in Section 173.6 of Title 49 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

(3) A person transporting medical waste pursuant to this section shall provide a form or log to the receiving facility, and the receiving facility shall maintain the form or log for a period of two years, containing all of the following information:

(A) The name of the person transporting the medical waste.

(B) The number of containers of medical waste transported.

(C) The date the medical waste was transported.

(b) A generator transporting medical waste pursuant to this section shall not be regulated as a hazardous waste hauler pursuant to Section 117660.

Chapter 5 - Large Quantity Generator Requirements

117950 - Registration

(a) Each large quantity generator, except as specified in subdivisions (b) and (c), shall register with the enforcement agency prior to commencement of the generation of medical waste.

(b) Large quantity generators operating as a business in the same building, or that are associated with a group practice in the same building, may register as one generator.

(c) Large quantity generators as specified in subdivision (a), operating in different buildings on the same or adjacent property, or as approved by the enforcement agency, may register as one generator.

(d) “Adjacent,” for purposes of subdivision (c), means real property within 400 yards from the property boundary of the primary registration site. All federal transportation requirements specified in Section 173.6 of Part 49 of the Code of Federal Regulations shall apply for purposes of transporting medical waste from adjacent properties.

117960 - Medical Waste Management Plan

A large quantity generator required to register with the enforcement agency shall file with the enforcement agency a medical waste management plan, on forms prescribed by the enforcement agency, if provided. The plans shall contain, but are not limited to, all of the following:

(a) The name of the person.

(b) The business address of the person.

(c) The type of business.

(d) The types, and the estimated average monthly quantity, of medical waste generated.

(e) The type of treatment used onsite, if applicable. For generators with onsite medical waste treatment facilities, the treatment capacity of the onsite treatment facility.

(f) The name and business address of the registered hazardous waste hauler used by the generator to have untreated medical waste removed for treatment, if applicable, and, if applicable, the name and business address of the common carrier transporting pharmaceutical waste pursuant to Section 118032.

(g) The name and business address of the offsite medical waste treatment facility to which the medical waste is being hauled, if applicable.

(h) An emergency action plan complying with regulations adopted by the department.

(i) If applicable, the steps taken to categorize the pharmaceutical wastes generated at the facility to ensure that the wastes are properly disposed of as follows:

> (1) Pharmaceutical wastes classified by the federal Drug Enforcement Agency (DEA) as "controlled substances" are disposed of in compliance with DEA requirements.
>
> (2) The name and business address of the hazardous waste hauler used by the generator to have wastes that are not regulated pursuant to the federal Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976 and nonradioactive pharmaceutical wastes regulated as medical wastes safely removed for treatment in compliance with subdivision (b) of Section 118222, as waste requiring specific methods.

(j) A closure plan for the termination of treatment at the facility using, at a minimum, one of the methods of decontamination specified in subdivision (a) or (b) of Section 118295, thereby rendering the property to an acceptable sanitary condition following the completion of treatment services at the site.

(k) A statement certifying that the information provided is complete and accurate.

117965 - Annual Inspection

Large quantity generators shall be subject to at least annual inspection by the enforcement agency.

117967 - Onsite Treatment

(a) Large quantity generators that treat medical waste onsite using steam sterilization, incineration, microwave technology, or other department approved treatment technology to treat medical waste shall train the operators of the equipment in its use, proper protective equipment to wear, if necessary, and how to clean up spills to ensure that the equipment is being operated in a safe and effective manner.

(b) Annual training for the operators shall be provided after the initial training has been completed.

(c) The training shall be documented and the documentation shall be retained at the facility for a minimum of two years. Training shall comply with applicable federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration regulations, including those found in Section 1910 of Title 29 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

117970 - Medical Waste Generator Registration

(a) Each enforcement agency shall follow procedures consistent with this chapter in registering medical waste generators.

(b) Each medical waste registration issued by the enforcement agency for large quantity generators shall be valid for one year.

(c) An application for renewal of the registration shall be filed with the enforcement agency not less than 90 days prior to the expiration date. Failure to meet this requirement shall result in an assessment of a late fee.

(d) Generators shall update their medical waste management plan, established pursuant to Section 117960, when any of the information in the plan changes and shall have the plan on file for review during an inspection or upon request. The updated plan shall be submitted within 30 days of the change.

117971 - Inspection and Enforcement Cost Recovery

In addition to the fees collected pursuant to Section 117995, the department, in the implementation of this part, shall recover its actual costs for services related to large quantity medical waste generator followup inspections and enforcement activities necessary to ensure compliance with this part. In no event shall the department charge more than the actual costs incurred by the department.

117975 - Treatment and Tracking Records

(a) A large quantity medical waste generator required to register pursuant to this chapter shall maintain for a minimum of two years individual treatment records and the tracking document for all untreated medical waste shipped offsite for treatment. The generator shall report or submit to the enforcement agency, upon request, all of the following:

(1) Treatment operating records. Operating records shall be maintained in written or electronic form.

(2) An emergency action plan in accordance with regulations adopted by the department.

(3) Tracking documents or electronically archived tracking documents maintained by the facility or medical waste hauler of all untreated medical wastes shipped offsite for treatment.

(b) Documentation shall be made available to the enforcement agency onsite as soon as feasible, but no more than two business days following the request.

117976 - Materials of Trade Exemption

(a) A large quantity medical waste generator or parent organization that employs health care professionals who generate medical waste may transport medical waste generated in limited quantities up to 35.2 pounds to the central location of accumulation, provided that all of the following are met:

(1) The principal business of the generator is not to transport or treat regulated medical waste.

(2) The generator shall adhere to the conditions and requirements set forth in the materials of trade exception, as specified in Section 173.6 of Title 49 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

(3) A person transporting medical waste pursuant to this section shall provide a form or log to the receiving facility, and the receiving facility shall maintain the form or log for a period of two years, containing all of the following information:

(A) The name of the person transporting the medical waste.

(B) The number of containers of medical waste transported.

(C) The date the medical waste was transported.

(b) A generator transporting medical waste pursuant to this section shall not be regulated as a hazardous waste hauler pursuant to Section 117660.

117980 - Containment and Storage
Containment and storage of medical waste shall be in accordance with Chapter 9 (commencing with Section 118275).

117985 - Treatment
Medical waste shall be treated using treatment technologies approved in accordance with Chapter 8 (commencing with Section 118215).

117990 - Fees
The fee schedule specified in Section 117995 shall be for the issuance of medical waste registrations and onsite medical waste treatment facility permits when the department serves as the enforcement agency for large quantity generators. This fee schedule shall be adjusted annually in accordance with Section 100425, or as provided in the regulations adopted by the department, not to exceed the reasonable regulatory costs of the department. Local enforcement agencies shall set fees that shall be sufficient to cover their costs in implementing this part with regard to large quantity generators.

117995 - Collect Fees
The registration and annual permit fee for large quantity generators shall be set in following amounts:

(a)

(1) A general acute care hospital, as defined in subdivision (a) of Section 1250, that has one or more beds, but not more than 99 beds, shall pay six hundred dollars ($600), a facility with 100 or more beds, but not more than 199 beds, shall pay eight hundred sixty dollars ($860), a facility with 200 or more beds, but not more than 250 beds shall pay one thousand one hundred dollars ($1,100), and a facility with 251 or more beds shall pay one thousand four hundred dollars ($1,400).

(2) In addition to the fees specified in paragraph (1), a general acute care hospital which is providing onsite treatment of medical waste shall pay an annual medical waste treatment facility inspection and permit fee of three hundred dollars ($300), if the facility has one or more beds but not more than 99 beds, five hundred dollars ($500), if the facility has 100 or more beds but not more than 250 beds, and one thousand dollars ($1,000), if the facility has 251 or more beds.

(b) A specialty clinic, providing surgical, dialysis, or rehabilitation services, as defined in subdivision (b) of Section 1204, shall pay three hundred fifty dollars ($350).

(c) A skilled nursing facility, as defined in subdivision (c) of Section 1250, that has one or more beds, but not more than 99 beds shall pay two hundred seventy-five dollars ($275), a facility with 100 or more beds, but not more than 199 beds shall pay three hundred fifty dollars ($350), and a facility with 200 or more beds shall pay four hundred dollars ($400).

(d) An acute psychiatric hospital, as defined in subdivision (b) of Section 1250, shall pay two hundred dollars ($200).

(e) An intermediate care facility, as defined in subdivision (d) of Section 1250, shall pay three hundred dollars ($300).

(f) A primary care clinic, as defined in Section 1200.1, shall pay three hundred fifty dollars ($350).

(g) A licensed clinical laboratory, as defined in paragraph (3) of subdivision (a) of Section 1206 of the Business and Professions Code, shall pay two hundred dollars ($200).

(h) A health care service plan facility, as defined in subdivision (f) of Section 1345, shall pay three hundred fifty dollars ($350).

(i) A veterinary clinic or veterinary hospital shall pay two hundred dollars ($200).
(j) A large quantity generator medical office shall pay two hundred dollars ($200).

(k) In addition to the fees specified in subdivisions (b) to (j), inclusive, a large quantity generator of medical waste which is providing onsite treatment of medical waste shall pay an annual medical waste treatment facility inspection and permit fee of three hundred dollars ($300).

(l) The department may collect annual fees and issue permits on a biennial basis.

Chapter 6 - Medical Waste Haulers

118000 - Transportation of Medical Waste

(a) Medical waste shall only be transported to a permitted medical waste treatment facility, or to a transfer station or another registered generator for the purpose of consolidation before treatment and disposal.

(b) Facilities for the transfer of medical waste shall be annually inspected and issued permits in accordance with the regulations adopted pursuant to this part.

(c) Medical waste transported out of state shall be consigned to a permitted medical waste treatment facility in the receiving state. If there is no permitted medical waste treatment facility in the receiving state or if the medical waste is crossing an international border, the medical waste shall be treated in accordance with Chapter 8 (commencing with Section 118215) prior to being transported out of the state.

118025 - Registration

All medical waste shall be hauled by a registered hazardous waste hauler, the United States Postal Service, or by a person with an exception granted pursuant to Section 117946 for small quantity generators or pursuant to Section 117976 for large quantity generators.

118027 - Unknowingly Transports

A person who is authorized to collect solid waste, as defined in Section 40191 of the Public Resources Code, who unknowingly transports medical waste to a solid waste facility, as defined in Section 40194 of the Public Resources Code, incidental to the collection of solid waste, is exempt from the provisions of the Medical Waste Management Act with regard to that waste. If a solid waste transporter discovers that he or she has hauled untreated medical waste to a landfill or materials recovery facility, he or she shall contact the originating generator of the medical waste to respond to the landfill or recovery facility to provide ultimate proper disposal of the medical waste. The solid waste facility operator may, at its discretion and after contacting the generator, make arrangements for the proper treatment and disposal of the medical waste at a facility approved by the department. Title to the waste remains with the generator. Reimbursement costs for the proper management of discovered waste shall be the originating generator’s responsibility.

118029 - Information Requirements

(a) Haulers of medical waste in California, with the exception of those using a materials of trade exception as specified in Sections 117946 and 117976, and United States Department of Transportation licensed common carriers hauling pharmaceutical waste, shall meet all United States Department of Transportation requirements for transporting medical waste and shall be hazardous waste haulers in California. On or before July 1 of each year, a registered hazardous waste hauler that transports medical waste shall so notify the department, and provide, in a format that conforms to the protocol requirements for submission of data to the department, the following information:

(1) Business name, address, and telephone number.

(2) Name of owner, operator, and contact person.

(3) Hazardous waste transporter registration number.

(4) The number of vehicles and trailers transporting medical waste within the state as of that date.

(5) Types and quantities of medical waste collected, in pounds.

(6) The names of the generators whose waste has been transported by the hauler and the amounts of medical waste transported, by waste type category.

(b) Each registered hazardous waste hauler shall provide to the department a list of all medical waste generators serviced by that person during the previous 12 months. That list shall include the business name, business address, mailing address, telephone number, and other information as required by the department to collect annual fees pursuant to Section 117924. The list shall be provided to the department within 10 days of the close of the earliest calendar quarter ending September 30, December 31, March 31, or June 30, or as otherwise required by the department.

118032 - Pharmaceutical Waste Hauling Exemption

A pharmaceutical waste generator or parent organization that employs health care professionals who generate pharmaceutical waste is exempt from the requirements of subdivision (a) of Section 118000 if all of the following requirements are met:

(a) The generator or parent organization has on file one of the following:

(1) If the generator or parent organization is a small quantity generator required to register pursuant to Chapter 4 (commencing with Section 117925), a medical waste management plan prepared pursuant to Section 117935.

(2) If the generator or parent organization is a small quantity generator not required to register pursuant to Chapter 4 (commencing with Section 117925), the information document maintained pursuant to subdivision (a) of Section 117945.

(3) If the generator or parent organization is a large quantity generator, a medical waste management plan prepared pursuant to Section 117960.

(b) The generator or health care professional who generated the pharmaceutical waste transports the pharmaceutical waste himself or herself, or directs a member of his or her staff to transport the pharmaceutical waste to a parent organization or another health care facility for the purpose of consolidation before treatment and disposal, or contracts with a common carrier to transport the pharmaceutical waste to a permitted medical waste treatment facility or transfer station.

(c) Except as provided in subdivision (d), all of the following requirements are met:

(1) Prior to shipment of the pharmaceutical waste, the generator notifies the intended destination facility that it is shipping pharmaceutical waste to it and provides a copy of the tracking document, as specified in Section 118040.

(2) The generator and the facility receiving the pharmaceutical waste maintain the tracking document, as specified in Section 118040.

(3) The facility receiving the pharmaceutical waste notifies the generator of the receipt of the pharmaceutical waste shipment and any discrepancies between the items received and the tracking document, as specified in Section 118040, evidencing diversion of the pharmaceutical waste.

(4) The generator notifies the enforcement agency of any discrepancies between the items received and the tracking document, as specified in Section 118040, evidencing diversion of the pharmaceutical waste.

(d)

(1) Notwithstanding subdivision (c), if a health care professional who generates pharmaceutical waste returns the pharmaceutical waste to the parent organization for the purpose of consolidation before treatment and disposal over a period of time, a single-page form or multiple entry log may be substituted for the tracking document, if the form or log contains all of the following information:

(A) The name of the person transporting the pharmaceutical waste.

(B) The number of containers of pharmaceutical waste. This clause does not require any generator to maintain a separate pharmaceutical waste container for every patient or to maintain records as to the specified source of the pharmaceutical waste in any container.

(C) The date that the pharmaceutical waste was returned.

(2) The form or log described in paragraph (1) shall be maintained in the files of the health care professional who generates the pharmaceutical waste and the parent organization or another health care facility that receives the pharmaceutical waste.

(3) This subdivision does not prohibit the use of a single document to verify the return of more than one container to a parent organization or another health care facility, provided the form or log meets the requirements specified in paragraphs (1) and (2).

118033 - Secure Pharmaceutical Waste

The pharmaceutical waste that is separated from medical waste by the generator shall be maintained in a manner to secure the pharmaceutical waste contents from access by unauthorized individuals. Any suspected or confirmed tampering of, unauthorized access to, or loss of this pharmaceutical waste shall be reported to the appropriate state licensing authority.

118035 - Transfer of Medical Waste

For the purpose of transferring medical waste prior to reaching a permitted medical waste treatment facility, medical waste shall not be unloaded, reloaded, or transferred to another vehicle at any location, except at a permitted medical waste transfer station or in the case of a vehicle breakdown or other emergency.

118040 - Tracking Records

(a) Except with regard to sharps waste consolidated by a home-generated sharps consolidation point approved pursuant to Section 117904, a hazardous waste transporter transporting medical waste shall maintain a completed tracking document in compliance with subdivision (b) for the purpose of tracking the medical waste from the point when the waste leaves the generator facility until it receives final treatment. At the time that the medical waste is received by a hazardous waste transporter, the transporter shall provide the medical waste generator with a copy of the tracking document. The transporter transporting medical waste shall maintain its copy of the tracking document for three years.

(b) The tracking document shall include, but not be limited to, all of the following information:

(1) The name, address, telephone number, and registration number of the transporter, unless transported pursuant to Section 117946 or 117976.

(2) The type of medical waste transported and the quantity or aggregate weight of medical waste transported.

(3) The name, address, and telephone number of the generator.

(4) The name, address, telephone number, permit number, and the signature of an authorized representative of the permitted facility receiving the medical waste.

(5) The date that the medical waste is collected or removed from the generator’s facility, the date that the medical waste is received by the transfer station, the registered large quantity generator, or point of consolidation, if applicable, and the date that the medical waste is received by the treatment facility.

(c) A hazardous waste transporter transporting medical waste in a vehicle shall have the tracking document in his or her possession while transporting the medical waste. The tracking document shall be shown upon demand to any enforcement agency personnel or officer of the Department of the California Highway Patrol. If the medical waste is transported by rail, vessel, or air, the railroad corporation, vessel operator, or airline shall enter on the shipping papers any information concerning the medical waste that the enforcement agency may require.

(d) A hazardous waste transporter transporting medical waste shall provide the facility receiving the medical waste with the original tracking document.

(e) Each hazardous waste transporter and each medical waste treatment facility shall provide tracking data periodically and in a format as determined by the department.

118045 - Transfer Station Permit

(a) The department shall charge an application fee for a permit for a transfer station equal to one hundred dollars ($100) for each hour which the department spends on processing the application, but not more than ten thousand dollars ($10,000), or as provided in the regulations adopted by the department, not to exceed the reasonable regulatory costs of the department.

(b) In addition to the fee specified in subdivision (a), the annual permit fee for a transfer station is two thousand dollars ($2,000), or as provided in the regulations adopted by the department, not to exceed the reasonable regulatory costs of the department.

Chapter 7 - Medical Waste Treatment Facility Permits

118130 - Permits

All offsite medical waste treatment facilities and transfer stations shall be permitted and inspected by the department. All onsite medical waste treatment facilities shall be permitted and inspected by the enforcement agency.

118135 - Permit Prior To Operation

Each person operating an offsite medical waste treatment facility shall obtain a permit pursuant to this chapter from the department prior to commencement of the treatment facility's operation.

118140 - Accepting Medical Waste

A health care facility accepting medical waste for treatment from the physicians and surgeons who are on the staff of the facility and who are small quantity generators shall be classified as an onsite treatment facility and shall be permitted and inspected by the enforcement agency.

118145 - Adjacent Small Quantity Generators

A health care facility accepting medical waste for treatment from small quantity generators that are adjacent to the facility shall be classified as an onsite treatment facility and shall be permitted and inspected by the enforcement agency.

118147 - Consolidation

Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, a registered medical waste generator, which is a facility specified in subdivisions (a) and (b) of Section 117705, may accept home-generated sharps waste, to be consolidated with the facility's medical waste stream, subject to all of the following conditions:

(a) The generator of the sharps waste, a member of the generator's family, or a person authorized by the enforcement agency transports the sharps waste to the medical waste generator's facility.

(b) The sharps waste is accepted at a central location at the medical waste generator's facility.

(c) A reference to, and a description of, the actions taken pursuant to this section are included in the facility's medical waste management plan adopted pursuant to Section 117960.

118150 - Compliance
Each enforcement agency shall follow procedures that are consistent with the Medical Waste Management Act and the regulations adopted pursuant to this chapter, when issuing medical waste permits.

118155 - Permits
A person required to obtain an offsite medical waste treatment facility permit pursuant to this part shall file with the enforcement agency an application containing, but not limited to, all of the following:

(a) The name of the applicant.

(b) The business address of the applicant.

(c) The type of treatment provided, the treatment capacity of the facility, a characterization of the waste treated at this facility and the estimated average monthly quantity of waste treated at the facility.

(d) A disclosure statement, as provided in Section 25112.5, except for onsite medical waste treatment facilities.

(e) A plan for closure of the facility using, at minimum, one of the methods of decontamination specified in subdivision (a) or (b) of Section 118295, thereby rendering the property to an acceptable sanitary condition following the ending of treatment services at the site.
(f) Any other information required by the enforcement agency for the administration or enforcement of this part or the regulations adopted pursuant to this part.

118160 - Permit Requirements
(a) Prior to issuing or renewing a permit for an offsite medical waste treatment facility, the department shall review the compliance history of the applicant, under any local, state, or federal law or regulation governing the control of medical waste or pollution.

(b) The department shall, pursuant to this section, deny a permit, or specify additional permit conditions, to ensure compliance with applicable regulations, if the department determines that in the three-year period preceding the date of application the applicant has violated laws or regulations identified in subdivision (a) at a facility owned or operated by the applicant, and the violations demonstrate a recurring pattern of noncompliance or pose, or have posed, a significant risk to public health and safety or to the environment.

(c) In making the determination of whether to deny a permit or to specify additional permit conditions, the department shall take both of the following into consideration:

(1) Whether a permit denial or permit condition is appropriate or necessary given the severity of the violation.

(2) Whether the violation has been corrected in a timely fashion.

118165 - Treatment and Tracking Records

On and after April 1, 1991, all persons operating a medical waste treatment facility shall maintain individual records for a period of three years and shall report or submit to the enforcement agency upon request, all of the following information:

(a) The type of treatment facility and its capacity.

(b) All treatment facility operating records.

(c) Copies of the tracking documents for all medical waste it receives for treatment from offsite generators, hazardous waste haulers, or, pursuant to Section 118032, common carriers.

118170 - Duration of Permit

(a) A medical waste permit issued by the enforcement agency to a medical waste treatment facility shall be valid for five years.

(b) An application for renewal of the permit shall be filed with the enforcement agency not less than 90 days prior to the expiration date. If a permittee fails to make a timely application for renewal, the medical waste permit shall expire on the expiration date.

118175 - Conditions for Granting Permit

(a) A medical waste permit may be renewed if the enforcement agency finds the permittee has been in substantial compliance with this part and the regulations adopted pursuant to this part during the preceding permitted period or that the permittee corrected previous violations in a timely manner.

(b) Upon approval of the enforcement agency, a permit may be transferred from one subsidiary to another subsidiary of the same corporation, from a parent corporation to one of its subsidiaries, or from a subsidiary to a parent corporation.

118180 - Permit Validity

A person required to obtain a medical waste permit shall, at all times, possess a valid permit for each facility in operation. A medical waste permit shall terminate prior to its expiration date if suspended or revoked pursuant to Section 118350 or, notwithstanding Section 118355, if either of the following occurs:

(a) The permittee sells or otherwise transfers the facility, except as specified in subdivision (b) of Section 118175.

(b) The permittee surrenders the permit to the enforcement agency because the permittee ceases operation.

118185 - Permit Procedures
The enforcement agency shall issue a medical waste permit upon evaluation, inspection, or records review of the applicant if the applicant is in substantial compliance with this part and the regulations adopted pursuant to this part and the applicant has corrected any previous violations. A decision to issue or not to issue the permit shall be made by the enforcement agency within 180 days of the time that the application is deemed complete, unless waived by the applicant.

118190 - Permit Conditions
When issuing, renewing, or revising any treatment facility permit, the enforcement agency may prohibit or condition the handling or treatment of medical waste to protect the public health and safety.

118195 - Denial of Permit
An enforcement agency shall inform an applicant for a medical waste permit, in writing, upon the denial of any application for the permit. Within 20 days after the enforcement agency mails the notice, the applicant may present a written petition for a hearing to the enforcement agency. Upon receipt by the enforcement agency of the petition in proper form, the petition shall be set for hearing.

If the department is the enforcement agency, the proceedings shall commence with the filing of a statement of issues and shall be conducted in accordance with Chapter 5 (commencing with Section 11500) of Part 1 of Division 3 of Title 2 of the Government Code, and the department has all the powers granted to a department in that chapter.

If the department is not the enforcement agency, the hearings shall be held in accordance with the ordinance adopting the medical waste management program.

118200 - Inspection
The enforcement agency shall evaluate, inspect, and review the records of medical waste treatment facilities for compliance with this part.

118205 - Fees
The fee schedule specified in Section 118210 shall cover the issuance of medical waste treatment facility permits and an inspection program, when the department serves as the enforcement agency. This fee schedule shall be adjusted annually in accordance with Section 100425. The department may adjust by regulation the fees specified in Section 118210 to reflect the actual costs of implementing this chapter. Local enforcement agencies shall set fees that shall be sufficient to cover their costs in implementing this part with regard to large quantity generators.

118210 - Collect Fees

> (a) The department shall charge an annual permit fee for an offsite medical waste treatment facility equal to either one hundred twenty-seven ten thousandths of a cent ($0.0127) for each pound of medical waste treated or twelve thousand dollars ($12,000), whichever is greater. The department may collect annual fees and issue permits on a biennial basis.

(b) The department shall charge an initial application fee for each type of treatment technology at an offsite medical waste treatment facility equal to one hundred dollars ($100) for each hour the department spends processing the application, but not more than fifty thousand dollars ($50,000), or as provided in the regulations adopted by the department.

Chapter 8 - Treatment

118215 - Methods

(a) Except as provided in subdivisions (b) and (c), a person generating or treating medical waste shall ensure that the medical waste is treated by one of the following methods, thereby rendering it solid waste, as defined in Section 40191 of the Public Resources Code, prior to disposal:

(1)

(A) Incineration at a permitted medical waste treatment facility in a controlled-air, multichamber incinerator, or other method of incineration approved by the department which provides complete combustion of the waste into carbonized or mineralized ash.

(B) Treatment with an alternative technology approved pursuant to paragraph (3), which, due to the extremely high temperatures of treatment in excess of 1300 degrees Fahrenheit, has received express approval from the department.

(2) Steam sterilization at a permitted medical waste treatment facility or by other sterilization, in accordance with all of the following operating procedures for steam sterilizers or other sterilization:

(A) Standard written operating procedures shall be established for biological indicators, or for other indicators of adequate sterilization approved by the department, for each steam sterilizer, including time, temperature, pressure, type of waste, type of container, closure on container, pattern of loading, water content, and maximum load quantity.

(B) Recording or indicating thermometers shall be checked during each complete cycle to ensure the attainment of 121° Centigrade (250° Fahrenheit) for at least one-half hour, depending on the quantity and density of the load, to achieve sterilization of the entire load. Thermometers, thermocouples, or other monitoring devices identified in the facility operating plan shall be checked for calibration annually. Records of the calibration checks shall be maintained as part of the facility’s files and records for a period of two years or for the period specified in the regulations.

(C) Heat-sensitive tape, or another method acceptable to the enforcement agency, shall be used on each biohazard bag or sharps container that is processed onsite to indicate that the waste went through heat treatment. If the biohazard bags or sharps containers are placed in a large liner bag within the autoclave for treatment, heat-sensitive tape or another method acceptable to the enforcement agency only needs to be placed on the liner bag and not on every hazardous waste bag or sharps container being treated.

(D) The biological indicator Geobacillus stearothermophilus, or other indicator of adequate sterilization as approved by the department, shall be placed at the center of a load processed under standard operating conditions at least monthly to confirm the attainment of adequate sterilization conditions.

(E) Records of the procedures specified in subparagraphs (A), (B), and (D) shall be maintained for a period of not less than two years.

(3)

(A) Other alternative medical waste treatment methods which are both of the following:

(i) Approved by the department.

(ii) Result in the destruction of pathogenic micro-organisms.

(B) Any alternative medical waste treatment method proposed to the department shall be evaluated by the department and either approved or rejected pursuant to the criteria specified in this subdivision.

(b) Fluid blood or fluid blood products may be discharged to a public sewage system without treatment if its discharge is consistent with waste discharge requirements placed on the public sewage system by the California regional water quality control board with jurisdiction.

(c)

(1) A medical waste that is a biohazardous laboratory waste, as defined in subparagraph (B) of paragraph (1) of subdivision (b) of Section 117690, may be treated by a chemical disinfection if the waste is liquid or semiliquid and the chemical disinfection method is recognized by the National Institutes of Health, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, or the American Biological Safety Association, and if the use of chemical disinfection as a treatment method is identified in the site's medical waste management plan.

(2) If the waste is not treated by chemical disinfection, in accordance with paragraph (1), the waste shall be treated by one of the methods specified in subdivision (a).

(3) Following treatment by chemical disinfection, the medical waste may be discharged to the public sewage system if the discharge is consistent with waste discharge requirements placed on the public sewage system by the California regional water control board, and the discharge is in compliance with the requirements imposed by the owner or operator of the public sewage system. If the chemical disinfection of the medical waste causes the waste to become a hazardous waste, the waste shall be managed in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 6.5 (commencing with Section 25100) of Division 20.

118220 - Anatomical Parts

Pathology waste of a human nature, as defined in subparagraph (A) of paragraph (2) of subdivision (b) of Section 117690, shall be disposed of by interment, incineration, or alternative treatment technologies approved to treat this type of waste, pursuant to paragraph (1) or paragraph (3) of subdivision (a) of Section 118215.

118222 - Waste Requiring Specified Methods

(a) Pathology waste that meets the conditions of paragraph (2) of subdivision (b) of Section 117690 and trace chemotherapy waste that meets the conditions of paragraph (5) of subdivision (b) of Section 117690 shall be treated by incineration or alternative treatment technologies approved to treat that waste pursuant to paragraph (1) or paragraph (3) of subdivision (a) of Section 118215 prior to disposal.

(b) Pharmaceutical waste from health care settings that meets the conditions specified in paragraph (3) of subdivision (b) of Section 117690 shall be treated by incineration or alternative treatment technologies approved to treat that waste pursuant to paragraph (1) or paragraph (3) of subdivision (a) of Section 118215 prior to disposal.

118225 - Sharps Waste

(a) Sharps waste shall be rendered noninfectious prior to disposal by one of the following methods:

(1) Incineration.

(2) Steam sterilization.

(3) Disinfection using an alternative treatment method approved by the department.

(b) Sharps waste rendered noninfectious pursuant to this section may be disposed of as solid waste if the waste is not otherwise hazardous.

(c) Onsite medical waste treatment facilities treating sharps waste pursuant to paragraph (2) or (3) of subdivision (a) shall ensure that, prior to disposal, the treated sharps waste is destroyed or that public access to the treated sharps waste is prevented.

118230 - Incineration
An operator of a hazardous waste incinerator permitted pursuant to Section 25200 may also accept medical waste for incineration.

118235 - Emergency Action Plan
Each medical waste treatment facility issued a medical waste permit shall provide the enforcement agency with an emergency action plan that the facility shall follow to ensure the proper disposal of medical waste in the event of equipment breakdowns, natural disasters, or other occurrences.

118240 - Animal Carcasses
Notwithstanding Section 9141 of the Food and Agricultural Code, animals that die from infectious diseases or that are euthanized because they are suspected of having been exposed to infectious disease shall be treated with a treatment technology approved by the department for that use if, in the opinion of the attending veterinarian or local health officer, the carcass presents a danger of infection to humans.

118245 - Fees for Alternative Treatment Technologies
The department shall charge an application fee for evaluation of an alternative treatment technology of two thousand five hundred dollars ($2,500) and shall charge an additional fee equal to one hundred dollars ($100) per hour for each hour which the department spends on processing the application, but not more than a total of five thousand dollars ($5,000), or as provided in the regulations adopted by the department, not to exceed the reasonable regulatory costs of the department.

Chapter 9 - Containment and Storage

118275 - Medical Waste Segregation and Storage

(a) To containerize or store medical waste, at the point of generation and while collected in that room, a person shall do all of the following:

(1) Medical waste, as defined in Section 117690, shall be contained separately from other waste at the point of origin in the producing facility. Sharps containers may be placed in biohazard bags or in containers with biohazard bags.

(2) Biohazardous waste, as defined in paragraph (1) of subdivision (b) of Section 117690, shall be placed in a biohazard bag and labeled in compliance with Section 117630.

(3) Sharps waste, as defined in paragraph (4) of subdivision (b) of Section 117690, including sharps and pharmaceutical waste containerized pursuant to paragraph (7), shall be contained in a United States Food and Drug Administration (USFDA) approved sharps container that meets USFDA labeling requirements and is handled pursuant to Section 118285.

(4) Trace chemotherapy waste, as defined in paragraph (5) of subdivision (b) of Section 117690, shall be segregated for storage, and, when placed in a secondary container, that container shall be labeled with the words “Chemotherapy Waste,” “CHEMO,” or other label approved by the department on the lid and sides, so as to be visible from any lateral direction, to ensure treatment of the biohazardous waste pursuant to Section 118222. Sharps waste that is contaminated through contact with, or having previously contained, chemotherapeutic agents, shall be placed in sharps containers labeled in accordance with the industry standard with the words “Chemotherapy Waste,” “CHEMO,” or other label approved by the department, and shall be segregated to ensure treatment of the sharps waste pursuant to Section 118222.

(5) Pathology waste, as defined in paragraph (2) of subdivision (b) of Section 117690, shall be segregated for storage and, when placed in a secondary container, that container shall be labeled with the words “Pathology Waste,” “PATH,” or other label approved by the department on the lid and sides, so as to be visible from any lateral direction, to ensure treatment of the waste pursuant to Section 118222.

(6) Pharmaceutical waste, as defined in paragraph (3) of subdivision (b) of Section 117690, shall be segregated for storage in accordance with the facility’s medical waste management plan. When this waste is prepared for shipment offsite for treatment, it shall be properly containerized for shipment in compliance with United States Department of Transportation and the United States Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) requirements.

> (A) Pharmaceutical wastes classified by the DEA as “controlled substances” shall be disposed of in compliance with DEA requirements.
>
> (B) Nonradioactive pharmaceutical wastes that are not subject to the federal Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976 (Public Law 94-580), as amended, and that are regulated as medical waste are placed in a container or secondary container labeled with the words “HIGH HEAT” or “INCINERATION ONLY,” or with another label approved by the department, on the lid and sides, so as to be visible from any lateral direction, to ensure treatment of the biohazardous waste pursuant to Section 118222.

(7) A person may consolidate into a common container, which may be reusable, sharps waste, as defined in paragraph (4) of subdivision (b) of Section 117690, and pharmaceutical wastes, as defined in paragraph (3) of subdivision (b) of Section 117690, provided that both of the following apply:

> (A) The consolidated waste is treated by incineration or alternative treatment technologies approved to treat that waste pursuant to paragraph (1) or (3) of subdivision (a) of Section 118215 prior to disposal. That alternative treatment shall render the waste unrecoverable and nonhazardous.

(B) The container meets the requirements of Section 118285. The container shall be labeled with the biohazardous waste symbol and the words “HIGH HEAT” or “INCINERATION ONLY,” or with another label approved by the department, on the lid and sides, so as to be visible from any lateral direction, to ensure treatment of the waste pursuant to this subdivision.

(b) To containerize medical waste being held for shipment offsite for treatment, the waste shall be labeled, as outlined in subdivision (a), on the lid and sides of the container.

(c) When medical waste is containerized pursuant to subdivisions (a) and (b) there is no requirement to label the containers with the date that the waste started to accumulate.

118280 - Containment and Storage
To containerize biohazard bags, a person shall do all of the following:

(a) The bags shall be tied to prevent leakage or expulsion of contents during all future storage and handling. When containers are prepared for transport offsite from the facility, they shall be prepared in compliance with United States Department of Transportation requirements.

(b)

(1) Medical waste may be placed into a biohazard bag not to exceed three pounds or one gallon and tied, as required in subdivision (a), in a patient room and shall be immediately transported upon completion of the procedure directly from the point of generation and placed into a biohazard container stored in a soiled utility room or other biohazardous waste storage area without having first been placed into a secondary container in the patient room.

(2) Medical waste may be placed into a biohazard bag hung on a hamper stand in a surgery suite and the bag removed from the hamper stand after completion of the procedure, taken out of the surgery suite, and placed into a biohazard container stored in a soiled utility room or other biohazard waste storage area.

(c) Biohazardous waste, except as provided in subdivision (b), shall be bagged in accordance with subdivision (b) of Section 118275 and placed for storage, handling, or transport in a rigid container that may be disposable, reusable, or recyclable. Containers shall be leak resistant, have tight-fitting covers, and be kept clean and in good repair. Containers may be recycled with the approval of the enforcement agency. Containers may be of any color and shall be labeled with the words “Biohazardous Waste” or with the international biohazard symbol and the word “BIOHAZARD” on the lid and sides so as to be visible from any lateral direction. Containers shall comply with United States Department of Transportation requirements when prepared for transport offsite from the facility.

(d) Biohazardous waste shall not be removed from the biohazard bag until treatment as prescribed in Chapter 8 (commencing with Section 118215) is completed, except to eliminate a safety hazard, or by the enforcement officer in performance of an investigation pursuant to Section 117820. Biohazardous waste shall not be disposed of before being treated as prescribed in Chapter 8 (commencing with Section 118215).

(e)

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (5), a person generating biohazardous waste shall comply with the following requirements:

(A) If the person generates 20 or more pounds of biohazardous waste per month, the person shall not contain or store that waste above 0° Centigrade (32° Fahrenheit) at an onsite location for more than seven days without obtaining prior written approval of the enforcement agency.

(B) If a person generates less than 20 pounds of biohazardous waste per month, the person shall not contain or store that waste above 0° Centigrade (32° Fahrenheit) at an onsite location for more than 30 days.

(2) A person may store biohazardous waste at or below 0° Centigrade (32° Fahrenheit) at an onsite location for not more than 90 days without obtaining prior written approval of the enforcement agency.

(3) A person may store biohazardous waste at a permitted transfer station at or below 0° Centigrade (32° Fahrenheit) for not more than 30 days without obtaining prior written approval of the enforcement agency.

(4) A person shall not store biohazardous waste above 0° Centigrade (32° Fahrenheit) at a location or facility that is offsite from the generator for more than seven days before treatment.

(5) Notwithstanding paragraphs (1) to (4), inclusive, if the odor from biohazardous or sharps waste stored at a facility poses a nuisance, the enforcement agency may require more frequent removal.

(f) Waste that meets the definition of pharmaceutical waste in paragraph (3) of subdivision (b) of Section 117690 shall not be subject to the limitations on storage time prescribed in subdivision (e). A person may store that pharmaceutical waste at an onsite location for not longer than 90 days when the container is ready for disposal, unless prior written approval from the enforcement agency is obtained. The container shall be emptied at least once per year, unless prior written approval from the enforcement agency is obtained. A person may store that pharmaceutical waste at a permitted transfer station for not longer than 30 days without obtaining prior written approval from the enforcement agency. A person shall not store pharmaceutical waste at a location or facility that is offsite from the generator for more than 30 days before treatment.

(g) The containment and storage time for wastes consolidated in a common container pursuant to paragraph (7) of subdivision (a) of Section 118275 shall not exceed the storage time for any category of waste set forth in this section.

118285 - Sharps Waste

To containerize sharps waste, a person shall do all of the following:

(a) Place all sharps waste into a sharps container.

(b) Tape closed or tightly lid full sharps containers ready for disposal to preclude loss of contents.

(c) Store sharps containers ready for disposal for not more than thirty days without the written approval of the enforcement agency.

(d) Label sharps containers with the words “sharps waste” or with the international biohazard symbol and the word “BIOHAZARD.”

118286 - Management of Home-generated Sharps Waste

(a) A person shall not knowingly place home-generated sharps waste in any of the following containers:

(1) Any container used for the collection of solid waste, recyclable materials, or greenwaste.

(2) Any container used for the commercial collection of solid waste or recyclable materials from business establishments.

(3) Any roll-off container used for the collection of solid waste, construction, and demolition debris, greenwaste, or other recyclable materials.

(b) Home-generated sharps waste shall be transported only in a sharps container, or other containers approved by the enforcement agency, and shall only be managed at any of the following:

(1) A household hazardous waste facility pursuant to Section 25218.13.

(2) A “home-generated sharps consolidation point” as defined in subdivision (b) of Section 117904.

(3) A medical waste generator’s facility pursuant to Section 118147.

(4) A facility through the use of a medical waste mail-back container approved by the United States Postal Service.

118290 - Common Storage Facility

Any small quantity generator who has properly containerized the medical waste according to the requirements of this article may store the waste in a permitted common storage facility.

118295 - Wash and Decontaminate Containers

A person shall thoroughly wash and decontaminate reusable rigid containers for medical waste by a method approved by the enforcement agency each time they are emptied, unless the surfaces of the containers have been completely protected from contamination by disposable liners, bags, or other devices removed with the waste. These containers shall be maintained in a clean and sanitary manner. Approved methods of decontamination include, but are not limited to, agitation to remove visible soil combined with one of the following procedures:

(a) Exposure to hot water of at least 82° Centigrade (180° Fahrenheit) for a minimum of 15 seconds.

(b) Exposure to chemical sanitizer by rinsing with, or immersion in, one of the following for a minimum of three minutes:

(1) Hypochlorite solution (500 ppm available chlorine).

(2) Phenolic solution (500 ppm active agent).

(3) Iodoform solution (100 ppm available iodine).

(4) Quaternary ammonium solution (400 ppm active agent).

118300 - Spill Decontamination

Any leak or spill of a medical waste by a medical waste generator, hazardous waste hauler, or treatment facility shall be decontaminated by procedures adopted by the department.

118305 - Solid Waste

A person shall not use reusable pails, drums, dumpsters, or bins used for medical waste for the containment of solid waste, or for other purposes, except after being decontaminated by the procedures specified in Section 118295 and removal of all medical waste labels.

118307 - Interim Storage Area

Medical waste that is stored in an area prior to transfer to the designated accumulation area, as defined in Section 118310, shall be stored in an area that is either locked or under direct supervision or surveillance. Intermediate storage areas shall be marked with the international biohazard symbol or the signage described in Section 118310. These warning signs shall be readily legible from a distance of five feet. This section does not apply to the rooms in which medical waste is generated.

118310 - Designated Accumulation Area

A designated accumulation area used for the storage of medical waste containers prior to transportation or treatment shall be secured so as to deny access to unauthorized persons and shall be marked with warning signs on, or adjacent to, the exterior of entry doors, gates, or lids. The storage area may be secured by use of locks on entry doors, gates, or receptacle lids. The wording of warning signs shall be in English, “CAUTION—BIOHAZARDOUS WASTE STORAGE AREA—UNAUTHORIZED PERSONS KEEP OUT,” and in Spanish, “CUIDADO—ZONA DE RESIDUOS—BIOLOGICOS PELIGROSOS—PROHIBIDA LA ENTRADA A

PERSONAS NO AUTORIZADAS," or in another language, in addition to English, determined to be appropriate by the infection control staff or enforcement agency. A warning sign concerning infectious waste, as that term was defined by Section 25117.5 as it read on December 31, 1990, that sign having been installed before April 1, 1991, meets the requirements of this section, until the sign is changed and as long as the sign is not moved. Warning signs shall be readily legible during daylight from a distance of at least 25 feet.
Any enclosure or designated accumulation area shall provide medical waste protection from animals and natural elements and shall not provide a breeding place or a food source for insects or rodents.

118315 - Trash Chutes
A person shall not use a trash chute to transfer medical waste.

118320 - Compactors or Grinders

(a) Except as provided in subdivision (b), compactors or grinders shall not be used to process medical waste until after the waste has been treated pursuant to Chapter 8 (commencing with Section 118215) and rendered solid waste.

(b)

(1) Grinding or compacting may be used when it is an integral part of an alternative treatment method approved by the department.

(2) A compactor may be used to compact medical waste if the type of medical waste compactor proposed to be used is evaluated by the department, and approved by the department prior to its use pursuant to the following criteria:

(A) The compactor operates without the release of liquids or pathogenic microorganisms from the medical waste during placement of the medical waste into, or removal of the medical waste from, the compactor units, and during the compaction process.

(B) The compacted medical waste will not release liquids or pathogens during any subsequent handling and no residual waste will be left in the compactor unit after the process is completed.

(C) Compactor operations and maintenance personnel will not be at any substantial increased risk of exposure to pathogens.

(D) The compactor has been demonstrated not to have any adverse effects on any treatment method. If only specific treatment methods are compatible with the compaction process, the department shall condition its approval of the compactor for use only in conjunction with treatment methods, with regard to which no adverse effects have been demonstrated.

(c) Medical waste in bags or other containers shall not be subject to compaction by any compacting device and shall not be placed for storage or transport in a portable or mobile trash compactor, except as allowed pursuant to subdivision (b).

Chapter 9.5 - Trauma Scene Waste Management

118321 - Citation of Part

(a) This chapter shall be known, and may be cited, as the Trauma Scene Waste Management Act.

(b) The Legislature hereby finds and declares that it is in the interests of the health and safety of the public and the solid waste industry to regulate the handling and treatment of waste that, but for contamination with large quantities of human blood or body fluids as a result of death, serious injury, or illness, would be solid waste.

(c) The Legislature further finds and declares that, in the interest of safe and uniform management of trauma scene waste, practitioners of trauma scene management should be subject to regulation by the department.

118321.1 - Registration and Fees

(a) A trauma scene waste management practitioner shall register with the department on forms provided by the department.

(b) The department shall register a trauma scene waste management practitioner and issue a trauma scene waste hauling permit to a trauma scene waste management practitioner who submits a completed application form and the registration fee, upon approval of the application by the department.

(c) A registered trauma scene waste management practitioner is exempt from the registration requirements imposed pursuant to Chapter 6 (commencing with Section 118025) or Article 6.5 (commencing with Section 25167.1) of Chapter 6.5 of Division 20 upon haulers of medical waste.

(d) Registered trauma scene waste management practitioners shall pay an annual fee of two hundred dollars ($200) to the department for deposit in the fund. The fee revenues deposited in the fund pursuant to this subdivision may be expended by the department, upon appropriation by the Legislature, for the implementation of this chapter.

118321.2 - List of Practitioners

(a) The department shall maintain an inventory of registered trauma scene waste management practitioners.

(b) The department shall submit a list of registered trauma scene waste management practitioners to all local agency health officers and directors of environmental health, county administrators, and county sheriffs, and shall make the list available, upon request, to other public agencies and to the public.

118321.3 - Department Duties

(a) Notwithstanding Section 117650, the department shall be the sole enforcement agency with regard to the management of trauma scene waste.

(b) The department, working with the trauma scene waste management industry and the health care industry, shall establish the following standards:

(1) Documentation of personal protection required to be provided for, and used by, workers in accordance with the California Occupational and Safety Administration’s bloodborne pathogen standards.

(2) Technologies and chemicals appropriate to the task of cleanup and disinfecting.

(c) The department may adopt regulations pursuant to which trauma scene waste management practitioners shall document both of the following:

(1) Identification of trauma scene waste within the scope of this chapter.

(2) Compliance with disposal requirements, including, but not limited to, tracking the transportation of trauma scene waste.

(d) The department shall adopt procedures to provide information to trauma scene waste management practitioners recommending procedures for removing trauma scene waste from trauma scenes.

118321.4 - Transporter Deemed Generator

As specified in Section 117705, a trauma scene waste management practitioner who transports trauma scene waste shall be deemed the generator of the trauma scene waste for purposes of this part.

118321.5 - Removal, Transportation, and Storage

(a) Trauma scene waste shall be removed from the trauma scene immediately upon completion of the removal phase of a trauma scene waste removal operation.

(b) Trauma scene waste shall be transported to a permitted medical waste transfer station or treatment facility pursuant to subdivision (a) of Section 118000, or may be stored in a dedicated freezer at the business location of the trauma scene waste management practitioner for a period of not more than 14 days, or as otherwise approved by the department.

118321.6 - Limitations

(a) This chapter does not limit or abridge the jurisdiction of the Division of Occupational Safety and Health of the Department of Industrial Relations.

(b) This chapter does not prohibit a business from employing or contracting with a person to provide cleanup or consultative services, including those services provided by an industrial hygienist, with respect to trauma scene waste if those services are incidental to the principal course and scope of services provided by the person.

Chapter 10 - Enforcement

118325 - Injunction for Violations
An enforcement agency, district attorney, city attorney, or city prosecutor may bring an action to enjoin the violation, or threatened violation, of this part or the regulations adopted pursuant to this part, in the superior court in the county where the violation occurred or is about to occur. Any proceeding under this section shall be in accordance with Chapter 3 (commencing with Section 525) of Title 7 of Part 2 of the Code of Civil Procedure, except that the enforcement agency, district attorney, city attorney, or city prosecutor is not required to allege facts necessary to show or tending to show the lack of an adequate remedy at law or irreparable damage or loss.

With respect to any action brought pursuant to this section alleging actual violation of this part or the regulations adopted pursuant to this part, the court shall, if it finds the allegations to be true, issue its order enjoining the continuance of the violation.

118330 - Order for Compliance / Administrative Penalty
(a) Whenever the enforcement agency determines that a violation or threatened violation of this part or the regulations adopted pursuant to this part has resulted, or is likely to result, in a release of medical waste into the environment, the agency may issue an order to the responsible person specifying a schedule for compliance or imposing an administrative penalty of not more than five thousand dollars ($5,000) per violation. A person who, after notice and an opportunity for hearing, violates an order issued pursuant to this section is guilty of a misdemeanor.

(1) If the department is the enforcement agency, the department shall provide notice, issue the order, and conduct the administrative hearing pursuant to subdivisions (d) and (f).

(2) If the department is not the enforcement agency, the provisions of subdivisions (b) to (e), inclusive, apply.

(b)

(1) In establishing the amount of the administrative penalty and ordering that the violation be corrected pursuant to this section, the enforcement agency shall take into consideration the nature, circumstances, extent, and gravity of the violation, the violator's past and present efforts to prevent, abate, or clean up conditions posing a threat to the public health or safety or the environment, the violator's ability to pay the penalty, and the deterrent effect that the imposition of the penalty would have on both the violator and the regulated community.

(2) If the amount of the administrative penalty is set after the person is served with the order pursuant to subdivision (c) or after the order becomes final, the person may request a hearing to dispute the amount of the administrative penalty and is entitled to the same process as provided in subdivision (c), whether or not the person disputed the facts of the violation through that process.

(3) An administrative penalty assessed pursuant to this section shall be in addition to any other penalties or sanctions imposed by law.

(c)

(1) An order issued pursuant to this section shall be served by personal service or certified mail and shall inform the person served of the right to a hearing.

(2) A person served with an order pursuant to paragraph (1) and who has been unable to resolve the violation with the enforcement agency may, within 15 days after service of the order, request a hearing by filing with the enforcement agency a notice of defense. The notice shall be filed with the agency that issued the order. A notice of defense shall be deemed filed within the 15-day period if it is postmarked within that 15-day period. If no notice of defense is filed within the 15-day time period, the order shall become final.

(3) Except as otherwise provided in paragraph (4), a person requesting a hearing on an order issued pursuant to this section may select the hearing officer specified in either subparagraph (A) or (B) of paragraph (4) in the notice of defense filed with the enforcement agency pursuant to paragraph (2). If a notice of defense is filed, but no hearing officer is selected, the enforcement agency may select the hearing officer.

(4) Within 90 days of receipt of the notice of defense by the enforcement agency, the hearing shall be scheduled using one of the following:

(A) An administrative law judge of the Office of Administrative Hearings of the Department of General Services, who shall conduct the hearing in accordance with Chapter 4.5 (commencing with Section 11400) of Part 1 of Division 3 of Title 2 of the Government Code, and the enforcement agency shall have all the authority granted to an agency by those provisions.

(B)

(i) A hearing officer designated by the enforcement agency, who shall conduct the hearing in accordance with Chapter 4.5 (commencing with Section 11400) of Part 1 of Division 3 of Title 2 of the Government Code, and the enforcement agency shall have all the authority granted to an agency by those provisions. When a hearing is conducted by an enforcement agency hearing officer pursuant to this clause, the enforcement agency shall issue a decision within 60 days after the hearing is conducted. Each hearing officer designated by an enforcement agency shall meet the requirements of Section 11425.30 of the Government Code and any other applicable restriction.

(ii) An enforcement agency, or a person requesting a hearing on an order issued by an enforcement agency, may select the hearing process specified in this subparagraph in a notice of defense filed pursuant to paragraph (2) only if the enforcement agency has selected a designated hearing officer and established a program for conducting a hearing in accordance with this paragraph.

(5) The hearing decision issued pursuant to this subdivision shall be effective and final upon issuance by the enforcement agency. A copy of the decision shall be served by personal service or by certified mail upon the party served with the order, or their representative, if any.

(6) The person has a right to appeal the hearing decision if, within 30 days of the date of receipt of the final decision pursuant to paragraph (5), the person files a written notice of appeal with the enforcement agency. The appeal shall be in accordance with the Administrative Procedure Act (Chapters 4.5 (commencing with Section 11400) and 5 (commencing with Section 11500) of Part 1 of Division 3 of Title 2 of the Government Code).

(7) A decision issued pursuant to paragraph (6) may be reviewed by a court pursuant to Section 11523 of the Government Code. In all proceedings pursuant to this subdivision, the court shall uphold the decision of the enforcement agency if the decision is based upon substantial evidence in the record as a whole. The filing of a petition for writ of mandate shall not stay an action required pursuant to this chapter or the accrual of any penalties assessed pursuant to this chapter. This subdivision does not prohibit the court from granting any appropriate relief within its jurisdiction.

(d) A provision of an order issued under this section, except the imposition of an administrative penalty, shall take effect upon issuance of the order by the enforcement agency if the enforcement agency finds that the violation or violations of law associated with that provision may pose an imminent and substantial danger to the public health or safety or the environment. A request for a hearing or appeal, as provided in subdivision (c) or (f) shall not stay the effect of that provision of the order pending a hearing decision. If the enforcement agency determines that any or all provisions of the order are so related that the public health or safety or the environment can be protected only by immediate compliance with the order as a whole, the order as a whole, except the imposition of an administrative penalty, shall take effect upon issuance by the enforcement agency. A request for a hearing shall not stay the effect of the order as a whole pending a hearing decision.

(e) The enforcement agency shall consult with the district attorney, county counsel, or city attorney on the development of policies to be followed in exercising the authority delegated pursuant to this section as it relates to the authority of the enforcement agency to issue orders.

(f)

(1) The department shall serve an order issued pursuant to this section by personal service or certified mail and shall inform the person served of the right to a hearing.

(2) A person served with an order pursuant to paragraph (1) may appeal the order by sending a written request for hearing to the department within 20 days after service of the order. If a request for hearing is not made within the 20-day time period, the order shall become final. Payments of any administrative penalty shall be made within 30 days of the date the order becomes final.

(3) Any hearings conducted by the department pursuant to this section shall be conducted pursuant to the procedures specified in Section 131071.

118335 - Inspection

(a) In order to carry out the purpose of this part, any authorized representative of the enforcement agency may do any of the following:

(1) Enter and inspect a facility for which a medical waste permit or registration has been issued, for which a medical waste permit or registration application has been filed, or that is subject to registration or permitting requirements pursuant to this part. Enter and inspect a vehicle for which a hazardous waste hauler registration has been issued, for which an application has been filed for a hazardous waste hauler registration, or that is subject to registration requirements pursuant to this part.

(2) Inspect and copy any records, reports, test results, or other information related to the requirements of this part or the regulations adopted pursuant to this part.

(b) The inspection shall be made with the consent of the owner or possessor of the facilities or, if consent is refused, with a warrant duly issued pursuant to Title 13 (commencing with Section 1822.50) of Part 3 of the Code of Civil Procedure. However, in the event of an emergency affecting the public health or safety, an inspection may be made without consent or the issuance of a warrant.

(c) Any traffic officer, as defined in Section 625 of the Vehicle Code, and any peace officer, as defined in Section 830.1 or 830.2 of the Penal Code, may enforce Chapter 6 (commencing with Section 118000) and this chapter, and for purposes of enforcing these chapters, traffic officers and these peace officers are authorized representatives of the department.

118340 - Unauthorized Actions / Criminal Penalty

(a) No person shall, transport, store, treat, dispose, or cause the treatment or disposal of medical waste in a manner not authorized by his or her permit or registration, this part, or the regulations adopted pursuant to this part.

(b) Any person who stores, treats, disposes, or causes the treatment or disposal of medical waste in violation of this part or the regulations adopted pursuant to this part is guilty of a public offense as follows:

(1) For a small quantity generator, a first offense is an infraction and is punishable by a fine of not more than one thousand dollars ($1,000).

(2) For a person other than a small quantity generator, a first offense is a misdemeanor punishable by a fine of not less than two thousand dollars ($2,000), or by up to one year in county jail, or by both the fine and imprisonment.

(c) A person who is convicted of a second or subsequent violation of subdivision (a) within three years of the prior conviction shall be punished by imprisonment in a county jail for not more than one year, or by imprisonment pursuant to subdivision (h) of Section 1170 of the Penal Code for one, two, or three years, or by a fine of not less than five thousand dollars ($5,000), or more than twenty-five thousand dollars ($25,000), or by both that fine and imprisonment. This section shall not apply unless any prior conviction is charged in the accusatory pleading and admitted by the defendant or found to be true by the trier of fact. If the defendant is a corporation that operates medical facilities in more than one geographic location, this subdivision shall apply only if the offense involves an adjacent facility involved in the prior conviction.

(d) Any person who knowingly treats or disposes, or causes the treatment or disposal of, medical waste in violation of this part shall be punished by imprisonment in a county jail for not more than one year, or by imprisonment pursuant to subdivision (h) of Section 1170 of the Penal Code for one, two, or three years, or by a fine of not less than five thousand dollars ($5,000), or more than twenty-five thousand dollars ($25,000), or by both that fine and imprisonment.
(e) This section does not apply to a person transporting medical waste who is required to be a registered hazardous waste transporter. Those persons are subject to penalties for violations pursuant to Article 8 (commencing with Section 25180) of Chapter 6.5 of Division 20.

118345 - False Statements / Failure to Register

(a) Any person who intentionally makes any false statement or representation in any application, label, tracking document, record, report, permit, registration, or other document filed, maintained, or used for purposes of compliance with this part that materially affects the health and safety of the public is liable for a civil penalty of not more than ten thousand dollars ($10,000) for each separate violation or, for continuing violations, for each day that the violation continues.

(b) Any person who fails to register or fails to obtain a medical waste permit in violation of this part, or otherwise violates any provision of this part, any order issued pursuant to Section 118330, or any regulation adopted pursuant to this part, is liable for a civil penalty of not more than ten thousand dollars ($10,000) for each violation of a separate provision of this part or, for continuing violations, for each day that the violation continues.

Chapter 11 - Suspension or Revocation

118350 - Grounds for Suspension or Revocation

The enforcement agency may suspend, amend, or revoke any medical waste permit issued by the enforcement agency for any of the following reasons:

(a) Violation by the permittee of any of the provisions of this part or any regulation adopted pursuant to this part.
(b) Violation of any term or condition of the permit.

(c) Aiding, abetting, or permitting the violation specified in subdivision (a) or (b) or interference in the performance of the duty of the enforcement officer.

(d) Proof that the permittee has intentionally made false statements, or failed to disclose fully all relevant facts, in any material regard, on the application for a medical waste permit.

(e) The conviction of a permittee, or the person in charge of the activity subject to the medical waste permit, of any crime that is substantially related to the qualifications or duties of the permittee or the person in charge of the activity, or that is substantially related to the functions that are subject to the medical waste permit.

For purposes of this section, a conviction means a plea or verdict of guilty or a conviction following a plea of nolo contendere. An action to revoke or suspend the medical waste permit may be taken when the time for appeal has elapsed or the judgment of conviction has been affirmed on appeal. That action may also be taken when an order granting probation is made suspending the imposition of sentence, notwithstanding any subsequent order pursuant to Section 1203.4 of the Penal Code. The enforcement agency shall take into account all competent evidence of rehabilitation furnished by the permittee or person in charge of the permitted activity.

(f) A change in any condition that requires either a temporary or permanent modification, reduction, or termination of the permitted operation to bring it into compliance with the requirements of this part and the regulations adopted pursuant to this part.

118355 - Proceedings
Proceedings conducted by the department for the suspension or revocation of a medical waste permit shall commence with the filing of any accusation and shall be conducted in accordance with Chapter 5 (commencing with Section 11500) of Part 1 of Division 3 of Title 2 of the Government Code, and the department shall have all the powers granted to a department in that chapter.

118360 - Temporary Permit Suspension
The enforcement agency may temporarily suspend a medical waste permit prior to any hearing, when it has determined that this action is necessary to protect the public welfare. The enforcement agency shall notify the permittee of the temporary suspension and the effective date thereof and, at the same time, shall serve the permittee with an accusation.

Upon receipt of a notice of defense by the permittee, the matter shall, within 15 days, be set for hearing. The hearing shall be held as soon as possible, but not later than 30 days after receipt of the notice.

The temporary suspension shall remain in effect until the hearing is completed and the enforcement agency has made a final determination on the merits. However, the temporary suspension is vacated if the enforcement agency fails to make a final determination on the merits within 60 days after the original hearing has been completed.